English for Tibetans

by

Amy Schultz & Debra Krincke

Gasang Gyamtso, Sonem Dorji, & Dongzhi Cairang

Tshe dbang rdo rje, Jermay Jamsu, and Lijia

Chenle

(Tibetan Translators) (Editors) (Illustrator)
## Contents

Preface <6>

1. Name နှစ်ဖော် <7>
   - Pronunciation Practice One စာကြောင်းနှစ်ဖော်ချမ်းသာခြင်း <9>

2. Home မိုး <10>
   - Puzzle Number One ပြိုင်နှစ်ချက်တစ်ချက် <11>

3. Age သား <11>

4. Job လုပ်ငန်း <15>

5. Nationality မိုင်းဖျင် <16>
   - Pronunciation Practice Two စာကြောင်းနှစ်ဖော်ချမ်းသာခြင်း <21>

6. Numbers လုံခြုံ <21>
   - Game Number One တစ်ချက်တစ်ချက် <22>

7. Singular and Plural အန်းအန်းအလိုက် <23>

8. Time ချက် <26>
   - Game Number Two တစ်ချက်တစ်ချက် <27>

9. Greetings ဆိုသည်မှာ <28>

10. Texts စာမိုင်း <29>
    - Important Words အစားရွင်းပြချက် <30>

11. Dictation ဒါရံ <32>
    - Song Number One ဝါသင်ကြာချက် <33>

12. Dictation and Exercises ဒါရံကြည့်ရှုချက် <34>
    - Game Number Three တစ်ချက်တစ်ချက် <35>
    - Game Number Four တစ်ချက်တစ်ချက် <36>

13. How many? ကမ်း <36>

14. How many? ကမ်း (II) <38>
    - Pronunciation Practice Three စာကြောင်းနှစ်ဖော်ချမ်းသာခြင်း <39>

15. Dongzhi’s Family ဗျာဝန်ထောင်ခံ <41>
    - Song Number Two ဝါသင်ကြာချက် <41>

16. Bill <42>

17. Conversation စိတ်ချက် <43>

18. Possessive Pronouns အဝေးဖြစ်သည် <44>
(19) Colors <46>
(20) Professions <48>
(21) Nationalities <50>
(22) This is, they are, these are <52>
(23) Dongzhi’s Home <54>
(24) Introductions <57>
(25) Dongzhi, Jobs, and Relatives <59>
(26) Dongzhi’s Home, Animals, and Relatives <63>
(27) The Three Singers <64>
(28) A Classroom <73>
(29) A Kitchen <76>
(30) Another Kitchen <77>
(31) Comprehension Check <78>
(32) A Tibetan Home <82>
(33) Mother and Daughter, Teacher and Student <85>
(34) Enjoy Yourself <87>
(35) Dongzhi, A Chemistry Student <90>
(36) What are they doing? <94>
(37) Dongzhi’s Family <96>
(38) A Fine Day <98>
(39) What are They Doing? <100>
(40) Photographs <103>
(41) Where are they going? Where are they? <104>
(42) Making a Bookcase <107>
(43) Which... ןכתי <109>

(44) Are going to do... קיים <110>

Song Number Five ישרות <111>

(45) A Countryside Home בתיווכי הרים <112>

Pronunciation Practice Six רעש <112>

(46) A Bus Ride מסעדה שלמה <114>

Song Number Six ישרות <117>

(47) Is there? קיים <118>

(48) The Singing Dog נבאומטנים <119>

Pronunciation Practice Seven קיים <120>

(49) The Frog Child רוח <122>

(50) Making Tea שטוח <125>

(51) Are there.... קיים <127>

(52) Can and Can’t (I) קיים <130>

Song Number Seven ישרות <131>

(53) Can and Can’t (II) קיים <132>

(54) Review לטעחת <134>

(55) Homonyms רעש <135>

Pronunciation Practice Eight רעש <135>

Song Number Eight ישרות <136>

(56) Like and Want רעש <137>

Pronunciation Practice Nine רעש <141>

(57) Look at... (…לשון) <142>

Debate: לקיח <142>

(58) Dorjisu and the Ball לועז <143>

(59) The Skipping-Rope רעש <146>

(60) Days of the Week ישרות <149>

Song Number Nine ישרות <151>

(61) Months and Seasons of the Year ישרות <152>

(62) The Weather נטפ <154>
63) Directions: north / south / east / west นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <157>

Pronunciation Practice Ten นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <157>

64) Usually do... (I) นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <160>

65) Usually do... (II) นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <162>

66) Illness (I) นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <164>

67) Illness (II) นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <167>

68) Playing With Matches นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <168>

Show and Tell นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <169>

Pronunciation Practice Eleven นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <169>

69) Going to do ... นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <170>

Puzzle Number Three นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <171>

Play Number Two: The Vase of Gold นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <172>

70) Review นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <178>

71) The Big Horserace นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <179>

72) Dazheng Is Awful นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <181>

73) Mrs. Mills Visits Rebgong นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <183>

74) Uncomfortable Shoes นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <185>

75) Bawog นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <187>

76) Shopping List นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <192>

77) Conversation นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <194>

78) A Donkey นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <196>

79) The Cat Teacher นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <197>

80) The Coming of the Great Zaa นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <200>

81) The Tortoise Dies นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <202>

Australia: Other Nomads นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <204>

New Zealand นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <206>

Britain (นั้น ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ นี้ๆ <208>

Pictures <212>
西藏政府
1) Name

a. What is your name?  
My name is ___.

b. What is his name?  
His name is ___.

c. What is her name?  
Her name is ___.

d. What is my name?  
Your name is ___.

Key Items

A. Western people tell their given name first. For example, look at this name--“Bill Smith.” “Bill” is the name given by Bill’s mother and father. “Smith” is Bill’s father’s name. “Bill” is called “first name” or “given name.” “Smith” is the “family name” or “surname.”

B. Unlike some languages, in referring to other people, English specifies whether they are male or female. “He,” “him,” and “his” refer to a male, who may be of any age. “She,” “her,” and “hers” refer to a female of any age.

C. There are other ways to correctly ask someone for his or her name. You might say: (a) Please tell me your name; (b) Would you please tell me your name? and (c) May I know your name?

D. When asking one person about another person’s name, you might say: (a) Do you know his / her name? (b) Do you know that person? What’s his / her name? (c) Who is that? and (d) Who is he / she?

Exercises
A. Write the name of four boys in your classroom. Use the pattern “His name is ___.”

B. Write the name of four girls in your classroom. Use the pattern “Her name is ___.

C. What is your teacher’s name? Use the pattern “My teacher’s name is ___.

D. Look at these sentences:
   a. His name is Bill.
   b. Her name is Sarah.
   c. My name is Kevin.
   d. Your name is Cairang. Now make each of these sentences a question. (What is his name?)

E. Repeat the above dialogue with a partner.

F. Look at a newspaper containing pictures of famous people. Practice asking the names of the people. (The girl with the green sweater is Limao. The boy with the glasses sitting next to her is Sangjijia.

G. The teacher begins by giving her name. The student sitting to the left of the teacher continues by first pointing at the teacher and saying, “This is Miss / Mrs. Smith,” and then at himself and saying, “I am Renchin.” In this way everyone in the circle has to give the names of all the people sitting to their right before introducing themselves. With more advanced learners more complex statements can be used, such as, “The girl with the green sweater is Limao. The boy with the glasses sitting next to her is Sangjijia.”
Pronunciation Practice One

A. Practice saying these words which have the /b/ and /p/ sounds. Listen carefully to your teacher. Both the /b/ and /p/ are made by closing the lips to stop the flow of air from the lungs. Both sounds can appear at the beginning, middle, or end of a word.

   /b/   /p/   /p/
   a. batch          e. bride          5. pride
   b. mob            f. nabbed         6. napped
   c. stable         g. lab            7. lap
   d. cab            h. tab            8. tap
   
B. Listen carefully to your teacher. You will hear the sentences below, but only one of the italicized words will be spoken. Circle the word you hear.

   a. Did the doctor give you a bill/pill?
   b. Let’s take a cab/cap to the airport.
   c. George was bitten by a rabid/rapid dog.
   d. Have you seen my beach/peach robe?
   e. My friends won’t stop ribbing/ripping me about my mistake.
   f. I have to swab/swap the boat before we can leave.
   g. Lend me your robe/rope. I can’t find mine.
Home

a. Where is your home? My home is ___.
b. Where is her home? Her home is ___.
c. Where is his home? His home is ___.
d. Where is my home? Your home is ___.

Key Items

A. There are other ways to ask this question: (a) Where are you from? [I’m from ___.] (b) Where do you live? [I live in ___.] นี่คือสถานที่ที่คุณเกิดมาหรือคุณอยู่ที่ไหน?

B. It is also correct to say “My / Her / Your / His home is in ___.” It is also correct to say “My / Her / Your / His home is in ___.”

Exercises

A. Write sentences using “home” for three boys in your classroom. Use the pattern “His home is ___.” เขียนประโยคดังนี้ “His home is ___.”

b. Her home is Lhasa.
c. His home is Gansu.
d. Your home is Qinghai.

d. Your home is Yunnan.

Now make each sentence a question. (Where is her home?) นี่คือสถานที่ที่คุณเกิดมาหรือคุณอยู่ที่ไหน?

F. The teacher begins by giving her name. The student sitting to the left of the teacher continues by first pointing at the teacher and saying, “This is Miss / Mrs. Smith. Her home is the United States.” Then he points at himself and saying, “I am Renchin. My home is Yunnan.” In this way everyone in the circle has to give the names and homes of all the people sitting to their right before introducing themselves. With more advanced learners more complex statements can be used, such as, “The girl with the green sweater is Limao. Her home is Qinghai. The boy with the glasses sitting next to her is
Sangjijia. His home is Sichuan.”  "I am Renchin. My home is Yunnan.”  This is Miss / Mrs. Smith. Her home is the United States.”  "I am ___.

b. Xining

A. Western people do not think it is polite to ask other people their ages, especially if two people have just met. It is also considered impolite for younger people to ask much older people their ages.  "I am ___.

c. Sichuan
g. Lhasa

d. Lanzhou

f. Tibet

Puzzle Number One  རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར།

Look for the following words in the puzzle below. Words can be found to the right (→), to the left (←), up (↑), down (↓), and diagonally (↗ and ↖). When you find a word, circle it. Good luck! རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། (→) རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། (↗) རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། (↑) རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། (↖) རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར། རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར།

a. Qinghai
c. Gansu
e. Sichuan
g. Lhasa

b. Xining
d. Lanzhou
ff. Tibet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Q</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>U</th>
<th>K</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>G</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3)  འགོས་གཉིས།

a. How old are you?  b. How old is he?  c. How old is she?  d. How old am I?

I am ___.  He is ___.  She is ___.  You are ___.

Key Items  རྒྱ་རབས་དཔག་པར།

A. Western people do not think it is polite to ask other people their ages, especially if two people have just met. It is also considered impolite for younger people to ask much older people their ages.  "I am ___.

c. Sichuan
g. Lhasa

d. Lanzhou

f. Tibet

B. “What is your / his / her / my age?” is another correct way of asking for this information.  "I am ___.

"What is your / his / her / my age?”  "I am ___.

“What is your / his / her / my age?”  "I am ___.
C. Learn to use “is,” “am,” and “are” correctly. Learn the following: “is” “am” “are”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Am</th>
<th>Are</th>
<th>Is</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am Tibetan.</td>
<td>They are Tibetan.</td>
<td>He is Tibetan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We are Tibetan.</td>
<td>She is Tibetan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are Tibetan.</td>
<td>Wanmadorji is Tibetan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonan and Cairang are Tibetan.</td>
<td>Gengsangcuo is Tibetan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deji and I are Tibetan.</td>
<td>That woman is Tibetan.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. When do you use “is” and “are?” “Is” is used when the subject is singular, or you are talking about only one of something. “Are” is used when the subject is plural, or when you are talking about two or more things. 

E. Westerners usually discover a person’s age indirectly. This happens after many conversations about the person’s personal experiences and memory of historical events.

F. Sometimes, when telling someone’s age, it can be stated with just the number or the number + “years old.” For example, “I am 24.” or “I am 24 years old.”

Exercises

A. Make sentences with the following words. Write your sentences on your paper. Use the following pattern: *word* - *is* a *word*? *word* - *are* there *word* here? *word* - *is* a *word*? *word* - *are* there *word* here?

- teacher - Is a teacher here?
- homes - Are there homes here?
- c. mothers
- a. pencil
- b. Tibetans
- d. TV (television)
- e. student
B. Are the following subjects singular or plural? 

a. ____ newspaper
b. ____ glasses
c. ____ vase
d. ____ door
e. ____ loaves of bread
f. ____ babies
g. ____ knives
h. ____ information
i. ____ class
j. ____ news

C. Add -s- where necessary:

a. The (boy) are playing in the garden.
b. The (cow) are on the mountain.
c. The (sheep) are eating grass.
d. The (yak) are drinking water in the river.
e. The Tibetan (hat) are very beautiful.
f. She has many Tibetan (robe).

C. Write sentences about the ages for five boys in your classroom. Use the pattern “He is ____.”

a. He is 2.
b. He is 3.
c. He is 4.
d. He is 5.
e. He is 6.
f. He is 7.
g. He is 8.
h. He is 9.
i. He is 10.
j. He is 11.
D. Write sentences about the ages of two girls in your classroom. Use the pattern “She is __.”

E. How old is your teacher? Use the pattern “My teacher is __.”

F. Walk around your classroom and ask at least ten students how old they are. Write their answers.

G. How old are your family members? Use this pattern “(name) is __.” (Use number + “years old” to state some of them.)

H. Look at these sentences:

a. You are 19.
   b. She is 20.
   c. Jack is 40.
   d. I am 50.

Now make each sentence into a question, for example, “Are you 19?”

I. The teacher begins by giving his age. The student sitting to the left of the teacher continues by first pointing at the teacher and saying, “The teacher is forty-two,” and then at himself and saying, “I am seventeen.” In this way everyone in the circle has to give the ages of all the people sitting to their right before introducing themselves. With more advanced learners more complex statements can be used, such as, “The girl with the black shoes is twenty-three. The boy with the leather jacket sitting next to her is twenty.”
(4) **Job**

**Key Item**

A. “What is your / his / her / my work?” and “What do you do? What does he / she do?” are also correct ways of asking about a person’s job. “What is your / his / her / my work?”

B. “Not”

C. “is” = “it is”

**Exercises**

A. We have now learned how to say “yes” and “no.” Write answers to these questions:

A: Are you thirty-one?
B: No, it isn’t. It isn’t my umbrella. It is Miss Ruby Brown’s __.

A: Are you a student?
B: Yes, it is. It is my coat.

A: Is this your book?
B: No, it isn’t. It isn’t my book. It is Dorji’s __.

A: Is this your coat?
B: Yes, it is. It is my coat.

A: Is this your hat?
B: Yes, it is __ my hat

---

a. What is your job? I am a __.
b. What is his job? He is a __.
c. What is her job? She is a __.
d. What is my job? You are a teacher.
e. Are you a teacher? Yes, I am. I am a teacher.
f. Is he a teacher? Yes, he is. He is a teacher.
g. Is he a teacher? No, he isn’t. He isn’t a teacher.
h. Is she a teacher? Yes, she is. She is a teacher.
i. Is he a teacher? Yes, he is. He is a teacher.

---

A. is not = isn’t
d. was not = wasn’t
b. are not = aren’t
e. were not = weren’t
c. has not = hasn’t
f. will not = won’t
d. have not = haven’t

---

**Exercises**

A. Are you thirty-one? d. Are you a student? g. Is it 6:20 (six-twenty)?
B: No, it isn’t. It isn’t my umbrella. It is Miss Ruby Brown’s __.

A: Are you a student? e. Is your home in Lhasa?
B: Yes, it is. It is my coat.

A: Is this your book?
B: No, it isn’t. It isn’t my book. It is Dorji’s __.

A: Is this your coat?
B: Yes, it is. It is my coat.

A: Is this your hat?
B: Yes, it is __ my hat
C. Make each sentence into a question. (How old are you?)

a. I am 16.  c. Sonandorji is 15.  e. My father is a teacher.
b. She is 25.  d. My mother is 60.

D. Make five questions. After you write your questions, ask someone in your class to answer them. Write their answers. Then answer their questions. Next, introduce each other to another person using these five sentences.

Is he Tibetan?
No, he isn’t. He is ___.

Is she Tibetan?
No, she isn’t. She is ___.

Is he Tibetan?
Yes, he is. He is Tibetan.

Is she Tibetan?
Yes, she is. She is Tibetan.

Is he Tibetan?
Yes, you are. You are Tibetan.

Is she Tibetan?
Yes, I am. I am Tibetan.

Key Items
A. Tibet is one of China’s autonomous regions. There are five autonomous regions in China. Tibetans are one of China’s fifty-six nationalities. Yes, you are. You are Tibetan. In this case the person’s nationality is used as a noun instead of an adjective. Yes, I am. I am Tibetan. “Yes, I am a Tibetan.”

B. When responding to this question you can also say, “Yes, I am a Tibetan.” In this case the person’s nationality is used as a noun instead of an adjective. Yes, I am. I am Tibetan. “Yes, I am a Tibetan.”

Exercises
A. Write answers to these questions: yes, i am a tibetan. i am tibetan.

a. What is your father’s nationality?
b. What is your mother’s nationality?
c. What is your teacher’s nationality?
d. What is your nationality?

B. Look at these sentences:

a. You are Tibetan.  c. Pencuhangjia is Tibetan.  e. Sonanlhamo is Tibetan.
b. I am not Tibetan.  d. Bill is not Tibetan.  f. Li Ping is not Tibetan.

Make each of these sentences into a question. (Am I Tibetan?)

a. You are Tibetan.
b. You are not Tibetan.
c. Pencuhangjia is Tibetan.
d. Pencuhangjia is not Tibetan.
e. Sonanlhamo is Tibetan.
f. Sonanlhamo is not Tibetan.
g. Li Ping is not Tibetan.
C. Look at a newspaper containing pictures of famous people. Practice asking the nationality of the people in the pictures. 

D. Read this dialogue with another student: རྣ་སའི་ཞིག་གི་དངོས་དབང་བྱེད་ཐེག་ཆེན་པོའི་ཐོན་ཏོག སྤིན་ཐོབ་བྱེད་རིམ་པར་བྱེད་བོད་ཀྱི་གུ་ངོ་ཁམས་ནས་སྤྱད་པ་ཐོན་ཏོག

Dongzhi: What is your nationality? 
Dawazhiba: I am Tibetan. I come from Tianzhu.
Dongzhi: Is your home in Qinghai? 
Dawazhiba: No, my home is not in Qinghai. My home is in Gansu. I come from Tianzhu.
Dongzhi: Does that old man come from Qinghai? 
Dawazhiba: No, he doesn’t. He is American. He comes from America.
Dongzhi: Is that short man American? Does he come from America? 
Dawazhiba: No, he isn’t American. He’s Brazilian. He comes from Brazil.
Dongzhi: Does that tall woman come from Qinghai? 
Dawazhiba: No, she doesn’t. She comes from Tibet.
Dongzhi: Where do those women in beautiful robes come from? Are they from Qinghai? 
Dawazhiba: They are Tibetan. Their nationality is Tibetan. They come from Tibet. They do not come from Qinghai. Their homes are in Tibet.
Dongzhi: Where do those two short fat men come from? 
Dawazhiba: They come from Gansu.

Now write answers to these questions: རྣ་སའི་ཞིག་གི་དངོས་དབང་བྱེད་ཐེག་ཆེན་པོའི་ཐོན་ཏོག

a. Who are talking? 
b. What are they talking about? 
c. Who are from Gansu? 
d. How many nationalities are mentioned? 
e. What nationalities are mentioned? 
f. Who comes from Brazil? 
g. Who are fat? 
h. Who is tall? 
i. Who are wearing beautiful robes? 
j. Where is the old man’s home?
E. Use the correct form of the verbs:

a. (play / plays / playing) He ___. She is ___. They are ___. He is ___. We are ___. You are ___. You ___. I ___. The Tibetan children like to ___ on the hill. Usually they ___ in the afternoon. I like to ___ in the evening but this evening I am not ___, I am studying English.

b. (read / reads / reading) He ___. He is ___. They ___. They are ___. We are ___. We ___ I am ___. I ___. They ___ Tibetan newspapers. They are ___ Tibetan newspapers in the evening. I ___ Tibetan magazines at night.

c. (swim / swims / swimming) Usually I ___. Today I am ___. He is ___ at 5 o’clock in the evening. He usually ___ at 5 o’clock, but today he is ___ at 6 o’clock. At the moment they are ___. We ___ at 6 o’clock. You ___ at 4 o’clock. She ___ in the river.

d. (watch / watches / watching) He ___ the sheep. He is ___ the sheep. They are ___ the yaks. We are ___ television. Those boys are ___ the goats. In the evening, I ___ the horses. It is 6 o’clock and I am ___ the horses. We usually listen to the ___ radio at night but tonight we are ___ television. He ___ television. I ___ television, too.

e. (cook / cooks / cooking) Cairangzhoma and Dawazhiba ___ supper. They are ___ supper. Usually Cairangzhoma and Dawazhiba ___ supper but tonight Cairangzhoma is ___ supper. I usually don’t ___ supper, my wife ___ supper.

f. (drink / drinks / drinking) I usually ___ coffee but tonight I am ___ tea with butter and salt. She doesn’t like ___ tea at night, she only likes ___ tea in the morning. I ___ beer. You ___ whiskey. They are ___ beer. She isn’t ___ beer. She ___ tea in the garden. They are ___ tea in the garden. You ___ tea in the garden.

g. (do / doing) I ___ my homework in the evening. She is ___ her homework. They ___ their homework. They are ___ their homework. We ___ our homework. We are ___ our homework. You ___ your homework.

h. (goes / go / going) We are ___ to ___ school. They ___ to school. You ___ to school. I ___ to school, too.

i. (makes / making / make) Those Tibetan women are ___ tea. They are ___ tea. Those Tibetan men are not ___ tea. Those Tibetan herdsmen are drinking tea. You ___ tea. I ___ tea, too. She ___ tea.
F. Read this text: ภูผ่านวันหนึ่ง

Dongzhi: Where do you come from?
Dawazhiba: I come from Qinghai, China.
Dongzhi: What’s your nationality?
Dawazhiba: I am Tibetan. What’s your nationality?
Dongzhi: I’m Tibetan, too.
Dawazhiba: Where do you come from?
Dongzhi: I come from Yunnan. Where does that tall man come from?

Dawazhiba: He comes from Japan. He’s Japanese.
Dongzhi: Where does that short woman come from? Is she Japanese, too?
Dawazhiba: She isn’t Japanese. She’s Indian.
Dongzhi: Where does that fat man come from? Is he Indian?
Dawazhiba: No, he isn’t Indian. He’s Nigerian. He comes from Nigeria.
Dongzhi: Where does that tall woman come from? What is her nationality?
Dawazhiba: She’s Turkish. She comes from Turkey.
Dongzhi: Where do those two short men come from? What nationality are they?
Dawazhiba: They’re Danish. They come from Denmark.
Now write answers to the following questions:

a. Where is Dongzhi’s home?
b. Whose home is in Qinghai?
c. Who lives in Qinghai?
d. Who comes from Yunnan?
e. Does Dawazhiba live in Yunnan?
f. Who are Tibetan?
g. Is the tall man Tibetan?
h. Who is from Japan?
i. Is the Japanese woman tall?
j. Who is from India?
k. Is the fat man from India?
l. Does the fat man come from Nigeria?
m. Who are from Denmark?

G. Use “come” or “comes” in the sentences that follow.

I / you / they / we / come
he / she / comes
I / you / they / we / don’t come
he / she / doesn’t come

a. He (comes) from Rebgong.
b. They ___ from Qinghai.
c. He doesn’t ___ from Golox.
d. They don’t ___ from Tibet.
e. We ___ from China.

H. Match the name of the autonomous region with the correct nationality:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Autonomous Region</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region</td>
<td>1. Tibetan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region</td>
<td>2. Zhuang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Tibet Autonomous Region</td>
<td>3. Mongolian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Ningxia Hui Autonomous Region</td>
<td>4. Uygur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region</td>
<td>5. Hui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. Kazak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. Lhoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. Han</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronunciation Practice Two

A. Listen to your teacher. First repeat all the words with /d/. Then repeat all the words with /t/.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/d/</th>
<th>/t/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. day</td>
<td>1. tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. dare</td>
<td>2. table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. dry</td>
<td>3. tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. dense</td>
<td>4. tangle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. body</td>
<td>5. pity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. rider</td>
<td>6. traitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. editor</td>
<td>7. stairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. red</td>
<td>8. rot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. decide</td>
<td>9. cute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. wedding</td>
<td>10. latter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Repeat the following words after your teacher. You are practicing the /d/ and /t/ sounds.

<p>| | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. dare</td>
<td>a. tear</td>
<td>7. wrote</td>
<td>g. road</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sweet</td>
<td>b. Swede</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. thread</td>
<td>c. threat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. spied</td>
<td>d. spite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. wedding</td>
<td>e. wetting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. beads</td>
<td>f. beets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(6) **Numbers**

<p>| | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1--one</td>
<td>2--two</td>
<td>3--three</td>
<td>4--four</td>
<td>5--five</td>
<td>6--six</td>
<td>7--seven</td>
<td>8--eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9--nine</td>
<td>10--ten</td>
<td>11--eleven</td>
<td>12--twelve</td>
<td>13--thirteen</td>
<td>14--fourteen</td>
<td>15--fifteen</td>
<td>16--sixteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17--seventeen</td>
<td>18--eighteen</td>
<td>19--nineteen</td>
<td>20--twenty</td>
<td>21--twenty-one</td>
<td>22--twenty-two</td>
<td>30--thirty</td>
<td>35--thirty-five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40--forty</td>
<td>43--forty-three</td>
<td>50--fifty</td>
<td>58--fifty-eight</td>
<td>60--sixty</td>
<td>70--seventy</td>
<td>80--eighty</td>
<td>90--ninety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99--ninety-nine</td>
<td>100--one hundred</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercises**

a. Write these numbers in English: 23, 33, 41, 48, 52, 57, 65, 71, 77, 83, 91.
b. How old is your father?
c. How old is your mother?
d. How old is your grandmother?
e. How old is your grandfather?
f. How many students are in your English class?
g. How many desks are in your classroom?
h. How many stools are in your classroom?
i. How many windows are in your classroom?
j. How many brothers do you have?
k. How many sisters do you have?
l. Say these numbers to your neighbor:

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a) 367894</td>
<td>b) 092195</td>
<td>c) 690257</td>
<td>d) 981287</td>
<td>e) 395706</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

•21•
M. Read these numbers out loud. “+” is said “plus” and “-” is said “minus.” “X” is said “times” and “÷” is said “divided by.” “=” is said “equals.”

\[ \begin{align*}
  a. 30 + 5 &= 35 \\
  b. 4 \times 4 &= 16 \\
  c. 25 - 5 &= 20 \\
  d. 100 - 40 &= 60 \\
  e. 57 + 38 &= 95 
\end{align*} \]

Game Number One JUnit Raru

“Number Snatch” is a game. Two teams of numbered players line up opposite each other. The number 1 player in one line faces the number 1 player in the second line, the number 2 player in the first line faces the number two player in the second line, and so on. There is a stool half-way between the two teams. On the stool there is an object that can easily be picked up (perhaps a pencil case, a ball, or a book). A number is called out, for example, eleven. Number 11 in both teams runs to the center and tries to grab the object and take it back to his or her seat without being touched by their opponent. Success is rewarded with a team point. The object is replaced on the stool and another number is called. Everyone has at least one turn. The team with the most points is the winner.
Singular and Plural

If there is more than one thing, an “s” is often added, although there are exceptions: one sheep, two sheep; one ox, two oxen, one goose, three geese. These exceptions are called uncountable nouns. If you can add an “s,” then the word is a countable noun.

Exercises

A. Write the correct word in the following sentences:

a. (boy) One ___ is a Tibetan. Three ___ are Chinese. (boy, boys)
b. (tree) One ___ is big. Three ___ are small. (tree, trees)
c. (yak) One ___ is white. Two ___ are black. (yak, yaks)
d. (pencil) One ___ is old. Five ___ are new. (pencil, pencils)
e. (Hui) One ___ is a student. Two ___ are teachers. (Hui, Huis)
f. (Chinese) One ___ is ___ singing. Two ___ are playing. (Chinese, Chinese)
g. (man) He is a big ___. They are big ___. (man, men)
h. (woman) One ___ is in the room. Two ___ are in the ___ kitchen. (woman, women)
i. (child) One ___ is ____ crying. Two ___ are ___ running. (child, children)
j. (sheep) That ___ is eating grass. Those ___ are sleeping. (sheep, sheep)
k. (cat) That ___ is yellow. Those ___ are white. (cat, cats)
B. Plural or singular? “Has” is the singular form. If the subject is singular, the verb also must be singular. “Have” is the plural form of “has.” If the subject is plural, the verb “have” must be used. In the following sentences, choose “has” or “have.”

a. He has / have two children.
b. He has / have one child.
c. They has / have two children.
d. They has / have one child.
e. His mother has / have a good job.
f. His mother and father has / have good jobs.
g. He has / have two hundred yaks.
h. They has / have one donkey.
i. They has / have two hundred sheep.
j. She has / have one large white goat.

C. Look at the following dialogue. Practice all the possible questions and answers with a small group. Take turns asking these questions of each member of the group. The person answering may choose any of the possible answers to give. After everyone has been interviewed answer the questions at the end for the members of your group.

Norwucairang: How many sisters do you have?
James: I have two sisters.
Norwucairang: What are their names? (What are your sisters’ names?)
James: One is Jane. One is Rose.
Norwucairang: How old are your sisters? (How old are they?) (How old are Jane and Rose?)
James: One is twelve. One is twenty-five. (Jane is twelve and Rose is twenty-five.)
Norwucairang: What are your sisters’ jobs? (What is Jane’s job and what is Rose’s job?)
James: Jane is a student and Rose is a nurse.

Norwucairang: Where are your sisters’ home? (Where is their home?) (Where is Jane’s home and where is Rose’s home?)
James: Jane’s home is New York. Rose’s home is Chicago. (One’s home is New York. One’s home is Chicago.)

Norwucairang: What is your sisters’ nationality? (What is their nationality?) (What is Jane’s nationality and what is Rose’s nationality?)
James: They are American. (My sisters are American.) (Jane and Rose are American.)
D. How many people in your group have more than one sister?  

E. How many people in your group have three brothers?  

F. How many people in your group have brothers and sisters that are married?  

G. How many people in your group have brothers that are 18 years old?  

H. How many people in your group have sisters that are 13 years old?  

I. Find out the answers to these questions for all the people in your class. Next, make a chart showing the number of brothers your classmates have and the number of sisters they have.
Time

What time is it? It’s 9:30 (nine-thirty). It’s 10:55 (ten fifty-five). It’s 1:00 (one). It’s 12:15 (twelve-fifteen). It’s 1:01 (one “O” one).

Key Items

A. Someone might say, “Excuse me. Do you have the time?” जितने कोई चाहे उसके समय को स्मरण करे।

B. There are different ways to tell time. 10:30 might be read as “ten-thirty” and “half-past ten.” 12:15 might be read as “fifteen minutes past twelve o’clock,” “a quarter past twelve,” and “twelve-fifteen.” 3:50 might be read as “ten till four” and “three-fifty.” तुम्हारे रेलवे स्टेशन से कितना दूर आप रहते हैं?

Exercises

A. Write answers to these questions: आपके समय को लेकर उत्तर लिखिए।

a. What time is it now?

b. What time does your English class start?

c. What time does your English class finish?

d. What time do you get up in the morning?

e. What time do you go to bed at night?

f. What time do you eat breakfast?

g. What time do you eat lunch?

h. What time do you eat supper?

i. What time will you come to my home?

j. What time does the bus leave?

B. Choose five questions from the above list and ask each question of a different person? Write down their answers using the following patterns: आपके जैसे विभिन्न मानसिक रूप से प्रश्न चाहे उत्तर लिखिए।

A. (name) says it is (time).

B. (name)’s English class starts at (time).

C. (name)’s English class finishes at (time).

D. (name) gets up at (time).

E. (name) goes to bed at (time).

F. (name) eats breakfast at (time).

G. (name) eats lunch at (time).

H. (name) eats supper at (time).

I. (name) will come to my home at (time).

J. (name) says the bus will leave at (time).
“Bingo” is a game: On a piece of paper, make a 5 X 5 grid, like the diagram below:

```
B I N G O

Free
```

Next, fill in the empty boxes with words that your teacher will give you. You may write the words in any box you choose. Now you are ready to play the game. Your teacher will first say a letter, either $b$, $i$, $n$, $g$, or $o$. Then your teacher will say one of the words. That word must be under the letter that your teacher says. Look carefully and see if the word is under the letter your teacher said. If it is, mark the word. For example, your teacher could say, “N, paper.” Then you would look under the letter “N” to see if you had written the word “paper.” If you have, make a mark by the word. The winner of this game is the first person who has made a row of words, either up and down, straight across in a line, or diagonally. The middle box, that says “free” can be used in any direction. When you have a row of five words, say “Bingo” loudly. Then your teacher will check your card. If it is correct, you are the winner.
(9) Greetings འའབོད་ཁྲབས།

Lhmucairang: Good afternoon.
Yunbumji: Good afternoon.
Lhmucairang: How are you today?
Yunbumji: I’ve very well, thank you. And you?
Lhmucairang: I’m fine, thanks.
Yunbumji: Good-bye. Nice to see you.
Lhmucairang: Nice to see you, too. Good-bye.

Key Item རིག་འི་གཅིག

“Good morning,” “good afternoon,” and “good evening” are all greetings used at the appropriate time of day. “Good night” is also used, but only at night and to say “good-bye.” More informal greetings include “How’s it going?” “What’s up?” and “How are you doing?” || “Good morning,” “good afternoon,” “good evening” བོད་ལི་གཞི་གཅིག་གི་རང་དུ་ཐུབ་བོད་སྒྲབ་སུ་བཤད་ལ་བོད་ལི་ཐུབ་བོད་ཆིག་པར། “Good night” བོད་ལི་གཞི་གཅིག་དེ་དག་དུ་སྦྱོར་བཤད་སུ་བཤད་ལ་བོད་ལི་ཐུབ་བོད་ཆིག་གུང་། “Good night” བོད་ལི་གཞི་གཅིག་གི་དུས་ན་བཤད་ལ་བོད་ལི་ཐུབ་བོད་ཆིག་“How’s it going?” བོད་ལི་གཞི་གཅིག་གི་“What’s up?” བོད་ལི་གཞི་གཅིག་བོད་ལི་ཐུབ་བོད་ཆིག

Exercises རིག་འི་གཅིག

A. Move around the classroom and greet one another using the above dialogue. རིག་འི་གཅིག་ལེགས་་བུ་དུ་ཐུབ་བོད་ཆིག་གི་འབུམ་གཉིས་དཔའ་ཆེན་བཤད་དོན་དང་།

B. As you enter your classroom greet your teacher with the appropriate greeting for the time of day. རིག་འི་གཅིག་ལེགས་་བུ་དུ་ཐུབ་བོད་ཆིག་གི་འབུམ་གཉིས་དཔའ་ཆེན་བཤད་དོན་དང་།

C. Teach these greetings to a friend who does not know English and then greet them in English when you meet them on the street, in your dormitory, and in your home. རིག་འི་གཅིག་ལེགས་་བུ་དུ་ཐུབ་བོད་ཆིག་གི་འབུམ་གཉིས་དཔའ་ཆེན་བཤད་དོན་དང་།
(10) Texts

a. Dongzhi is a teacher. He is not a student. He is twenty-four. He is not French. He is not American. Dongzhi is Tibetan. His nationality is Tibetan. His home is Lanzhou. 

b. Miss Ruby Brown is not a teacher. Ruby is a student. She is not Tibetan. She is not Chinese. She is French. She is eighteen. Her home is Paris. Her nationality is French. 

c. Li Ping is twenty-one. He is not Spanish. He is not American. Li Ping is Chinese. His home is Beijing. Li Ping is not a milkman. He is not a nurse. Li Ping is a student. He is a new student. His nationality is Chinese. 

d. Is that man fat? Yes, he is. He is fat. He is a fat man. That man is fat. 

e. Is that man fat? No, he isn’t. He is not fat. That man is not fat. That man is thin. 

f. Jane is not a teacher. She is not a student. Jane is a housewife. She is not Chinese. She is not Tibetan. Jane is English. Her home is England. She is forty-five years old. Her nationality is English. 

g. This is Tim’s shirt. It’s Tim’s shirt. It is a white shirt. Tim’s shirt is white. Tim’s shirt is not blue. Tim is fat. Tim is not thin. Tim is twenty-five. He is young. He is not old. Tim is not thirty. 

Tim is a policeman. He is not a policewoman. His home is America. His home is not Tibet. He is busy. He is not lazy. He is American. His nationality is American. He is not Tibetan. His nationality is not Tibetan. He is not Chinese. His nationality is not Chinese.
h. A: Is this your ___?         B: No, sir. It’s not my ___.

i. A: Is this your ___?         B: Yes, sir. It is my ___.

Important Words

American
America (the United States of America; USA)

French
France

Spain
Spanish

England

Key Items

A. “Fat” is not very polite. A better word is “large.” “Slim” may be used for “thin.” If you say to someone, “You are fat,” the person will not be glad. \* “Fat”ওরা সরু। সেরা মানুষ হয় না। “Slim”ওরা সরু। “You are fat,” the person will not be glad.

B. “What color is ___?” This question asks about color. Red, blue, green, yellow, white, black, and brown are important colors.

•30•
Exercise

Write answers to these questions:

a. Is Dongzhi a student?
   r. Is Jane a housewife?
b. How old is Dongzhi?
   s. Is Jane a teacher?
c. Is Dongzhi Tibetan?
   t. Is Jane Tibetan?
d. Is Dongzhi American?
   u. What is Jane’s nationality?
e. Where is Dongzhi’s home?
   w. How old is Jane?
f. What is Dongzhi’s job?
   x. Where is Jane’s home?
g. Is Dongzhi’s home Shanghai?
   y. What color is Tim’s shirt?
h. Is Miss Ruby Brown a student?
   z. Is Tim’s shirt white?
i. Is Miss Ruby Brown Chinese?
   aa. Is Tim’s shirt blue?
j. How old is Miss Ruby Brown?
   bb. What is Tim’s nationality?
k. Where is Miss Ruby Brown’s home?
   cc. Is Tim Tibetan?
l. What is Miss Ruby Brown’s nationality?
   dd. Where is Tim’s home?
m. Is Li Ping American?
   ee. Is Tim lazy?
n. Is Li Ping twenty-one?
   ff. What is Tim’s job?
o. Is Li Ping’s home Xining?
   gg. How old is Tim?
p. What is Li Ping’s job?
   hh. Is Tim thin?
q. Is Li Ping a nurse?
   ii. Is Tim old?

Discuss the answers to these questions with a partner.
(11) **Dictation**

Listen to your teacher and write in the missing words.

a. This is ___ pen. This is not ___ pen.
b. This is ___ shirt. It is not ___ shirt.
c. This is my ___ dress. It is not my ___. It is not my ___ dress. It is a ___ dress.
d. My ___ is a ___ mechanic. He is ___. His ___ is Dorji. He is ___. ___ not thin. He is ___. He is ___ French. He is not a ___.
e. Britt is an ___. She is ___. Her home ___ England. She is ___. She’s ___ air-hostess. She is not a ___.
f. Miss Ruby Brown is ___. She is not ___.
g. This coat is my ___. It is not my ___. My daughter is ___. She is a student. My ___ is ___. He ___ a ___ barber. He is not a ___.

**Key Items**


<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. a man</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. a woman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. a cow</td>
<td>f. a hammer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. a Tibetan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. a Chinese</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. an ashtray
c. an ice-cream
d. an umbrella
e. an American
Exercises

A. Put “a” or “an” before these words.

a. mountain
b. woman
c. egg
e. cigarette
f. dog
g. yak
h. donkey
i. horse
j. boy
k. ice-cream
l. girl

d. eye

(a mountain) (a woman) (an egg) (a cigarette) (a dog) (a yak) (a horse) (a boy) (an ice-cream) (a girl)

B. Look around your room and name the things you see using “a” or “an.”

Song Number One

Here is a well-known song. Mary is a girl who had a favorite animal friend.

MARY HAD A LITTLE LAMB

Mary had a little lamb.
Little lamb, little lamb.
Mary had a little lamb,
It’s fleece was white as snow.

Everywhere that Mary went,
Mary went, Mary went.
Everywhere that Mary went.
The lamb was sure to go.

1 lamb = a baby sheep
2 fleece = the sheep’s wool (hair)
3 snow = white frozen water that falls in winter
4 was sure = would
Dictation and Exercises

Write in the missing words as you listen to your teacher read the sentences.

A: Whose is this ___?

B: It is Stella’s ___. It is a ____ handbag. This is ___ handbag. ___ is not his handbag. It is not my ___ handbag. It is not ___ handbag.

Exercises

A. Describe the handbag to someone in your class.

B. Use the pattern and substitute the following nouns for handbag: wallet, hat, book, cup, chair, pencil, pen, eraser, letter, ice-cream, apple, animal. “wallets” “hat, book, cup, chair, pencil, pen, eraser, letter, ice-cream, apple, animal”

C. Look at this example: shirt / Tim
Whose is this shirt? It’s Tim’s. It’s his shirt.

Now do the following in the same way using “s,” “his,” and “her.” “s,” “his,” “her.”

a. handbag / Stella
b. car / Paul
c. coat / Miss Parker
d. umbrella / Mr. Ford
e. pen / my son
f. dress / my daughter
g. suit / my father
h. skirt / my mother
i. blouse / my sister
j. tie / my brother
k. pen / Alice
D. Write words in the blanks below. More than one correct answer is possible.

A: Is this your umbrella?
B: No, it isn’t. It ___ not my umbrella. It is Miss Ruby Brown’s ___.

A: Is this your book?
B: No, it ___. It ___ not my book. It is Mr. Walter Petty’s ___.

A: Is this your coat?
B: Yes, it ___. It ___ my coat.

A: Is this your hat?
B: Yes, it is. ___ my hat.

Game Number Three

The name of this game is “Simon Says.” The rules are simple. First, listen carefully. You should only obey the leader if he or she first says “Simon Says.” If you do not hear these words, you should not do the action. If the leader says, for example, “Simon says, stand up,” then everyone must stand up. But if the leader says only, “Stand up,” then no one should stand up, because the leader did not say “Simon says.” If you do something when you don’t hear the words “Simon says” then you are “out.” Before you begin to play, first look at the commands below and make sure you understand them. If you have questions, your teacher may model each command.

- a. stand up
- b. sit down
- c. turn to your right / left
- d. jump up and down
- e. open / close your book
- f. smile
- g. laugh
- h. cry
- i. close / open your eyes
- j. face the window / teacher / back of the classroom / door
- k. clap your hands
- l. wave
- m. sing
- n. dance
- o. cough
Game Number Four GetComponent

With a group of ten people sit in a circle. Each person will bring an item with them, for example, a hat, a coat, a pencil, an eraser, and a letter. One person begins by saying, “I am (name). This is my ____.” After they say this they place their item in the center of the circle. Each person will then do the same thing until all the items have been placed in the center of the circle. Next, one person will begin by choosing an item and asking someone in the group and saying, “Is this your ____?” The person should answer using the correct pattern from above. Repeat this exchange until the owner is found. Give the item to the owner. Now, the owner will choose the next item and begin the exchange, “Is this your ____?” again. Continue until all the items have been returned to their owners.

My brothers’ homes are in Lazhang. One is a teacher. One is a student. One is ___. One is ___.

I have two brothers.

What are your brothers’ jobs?

What are your brothers’ names?

How old are your brothers?

How many brothers do you have?

What are your brothers’ homes?

My brothers’ homes are in Lazhang.

One is a teacher. One is a student.

How many? GetComponent

Huajuecairang: How many brothers do you have?
Pencuhangjia: I have two brothers.
Huajuecairang: How old are your brothers?
Pencuhangjia: One is twenty-one. One is eighteen.
Huajuecairang: What are your brothers’ names?
Pencuhangjia: One is ___. One is ___.
Huajuecairang: What are your brothers’ jobs?
Pencuhangjia: One is a teacher. One is a student.
Huajuecairang: Where are your brothers’ homes?
Pencuhangjia: My brothers’ homes are in Lazhang.
Exercises 仏 sacks

A. Write answers to these questions: 仏 sacks

a. How many brothers does Pencuhangjia have?
b. How old are Pencuhangjia’s brothers?
c. What are Pencuhangjia’s brothers’ jobs?
d. Who is a teacher?
e. Who is a student?
f. Where is the brothers’ home?

B. Look at these sentences. 仏 sacks

a. I have two brothers and one sister.
b. My father is forty-five.
c. He is a teacher.
d. My mother is forty-five.
e. She is a teacher, too.

Write questions that will get all the information in these sentences as answers. (How many brothers do you have?) 仏 sacks

Key Items 仏 sacks

A. Nouns are names for things (table, egg, tree, chair, yak) and people (boy, woman, teacher, air hostess, policeman, student, Tibetan). 仏 sacks

B. What...? expects a noun--usually a thing for the answer. 仏 sacks

a. What is that? It is a tent.
b. What are those? They are books.
d. What is Mr. Dongzhi? He is a farmer.

e. What is on the plate? Some cheese.

C. Who...? expects a person for the answer. 仏 sacks

a. Who is Mrs. Lhamoyicuo’s daughter? Cairangzhoma. Cairangzhoma is Mrs. Lhamoyicuo’s daughter.
b. Who are those students. Tibetan. Those students are Tibetan.
c. Who are in the classroom. The students. The students are in the classroom.
d. Who are playing? The children. The children are playing.
Exercises (ratey)

A. Write down the names of things you see in your classroom. (blackboard, desks) 现在你看到教室里的物品有白板和桌子。

B. Write down the names of things you have in your dormitory room. 现在你列举出寝室里的物品。

C. Use the word “what” to make five sentences about items in your classroom. (What are those? They are desks.) 使用“what”这个词，造出五个关于教室物品的句子。

D. Make five sentences using the word “who.” After you have written your questions beginning with “who,” ask your neighbor and write down his answers. 使用“who”这个词，造出五个关于教室物品的句子。

(14) How many? (ratey)

Lhmucairang: How many sisters do you have?
Yangmaoji: I have one sister.
Lhmucairang: What is her name?
Yangmaoji: Her name is ___.
Lhmucairang: How old is your sister? (How old is she?)
Yangmaoji: She is fifteen.
Lhmucairang: Where is her home?
Yangmaoji: Her home is Ganzi.
Lhmucairang: What is her job?
Yangmaoji: She is a student. My sister is a student.

She is a student. My sister is a student.
Her home is Ganzi.
How old is your sister? (How old is she?)
She is fifteen.
Where is her home?
Her home is Ganzi.
What is her job?
She is a student. My sister is a student.
Exercises

A. Write answers to the following questions:

a. How many sisters does Yangmaoji have?
b. Where does Yangmaoji live?
c. What is Yangmaoji’s sister’s name?
d. How old is Yangmaoji’s sister?
e. Is Yangmaoji’s sister a doctor?

B. Discuss what you know about Yangmaoji with a partner.

Pronunciation Practice Three

A. /g/ and /k/. Listen to your teacher. First repeat all the words with /g/. Then repeat all the words with /k/. Look at the words as you listen.

/g/     /k/

f. bag       6. uncle

a. give       1. kiss
b. garden     2. awaken
c. target     3. bake
d. again      4. car
e. cigarette  5. crime

B. Now that you have practiced the sounds /g/ and /k/ do the following exercises to see if you can hear the difference between them.

1. could       a. good
2. pick        b. pig
3. degree      c. decree
4. gate        d. Kate
5. come        e. gum

6. picky       f. piggy
7. class       g. glass
8. lug         h. luck
9. crass      i. grass
10. tag           j. tack
C. Listen to your teacher. You will hear the sentences below, but only one of the italicized words will be spoken. Circle the word that you hear.

a. Who put this **tag** / **tack** on my chair?

b. I found my **keys** in the **bag** / **back**.

c. I’m concerned about the amount of **grime** / **crime** in this city.

d. The **grease** / **crease** in my skirt won’t come out.

e. This **wig** / **wick** is worn out.

f. Tommy is a **piggy** / **picky** eater.

g. Sarah grabbed / **crabbed** at the children.

h. The humidity made the air very **muggy** / **mucky**.

i. The teacher said, “Have you seen my **glass** / **class**?”

D. There is one more important lesson for the **/ k /** sound. In words with the spelling **/ kn /**, the letter “k” is silent, or not pronounced. The letter “n” is pronounced. Repeat the following words with a silent **/ k /**. **/ kn /**

a. knack

b. knee

c. knife

d. knit

e. knock

f. knot

g. know

h. unknown

i. knowledge
Dongzhi's Family

Dongzhi is a student. His home is Gansu. He is twenty. He has two sisters and three brothers. One sister is eighteen. She is a student. One sister is twenty-five. She is a nurse. The sisters’ home is Gansu. The sisters are Tibetan.

One brother is fourteen. He is a student. One brother is thirty. He is a teacher. One brother is twenty-five. He is a mechanic. The brothers’ home is Gansu. The brothers are Tibetan.

Dongzhi is not fat. He is thin. He is not short. He is tall. Dongzhi’s home is Gansu. Dongzhi has a new coat. His coat is green. It’s very smart. Dongzhi’s new green coat is very smart. His coat is not old. His coat is new. It is a lovely coat. Dongzhi is Tibetan. He is not French. His nationality is Tibetan.

Edelweiss is a flower’s name. The song comes from the movie “The Sound of Music.”

Here are the words to a famous song in America. This song comes from the movie “The Sound of Music.”

The Sound of Music.

Edelweiss is a flower’s name.
Edelweiss

Edelweiss, edelweiss
Every morning you greet me.
Small and white, clean and bright.
You look happy to meet me.
Blossom of snow may you bloom and grow,
Bloom and grow forever.
Edelweiss, edelweiss,
Bless my homeland forever.

(16) Bill

This is Bill. He is Canadian. He is twenty. He is a student. He is not a teacher. He is fat. He is not thin. He is young. He is not old. His home is Canada. This is his car. It’s green. It is a green car. It is a new car. It is not an old car. This is Bill’s hat. It is an old hat. It is not a new hat. Bill’s hat is white. Bill’s hat is not black. His hat is white. It is a white hat. It’s white. Bill has two brothers. Bill has no sisters. One brother is fourteen. He is a student. One brother is thirty-one. He is a mechanic. Bill’s father is fifty-five. Bill’s mother is fifty-four. Bill’s father is a teacher. Bill’s mother is a housewife.

Exercises

A. Write answers to these questions: जल्लोहि विलयिङ्गि देवीजिहिङ्गि विद्विधिङ्गि

a. Is Bill a man or a woman?  k. Is Bill’s father a mechanic?
b. Where does Bill come from?  l. What is white?
c. What is Bill’s nationality?  m. Who is thirty-one years old?
d. How old is Bill?  n. How old is Bill’s father?
e. Is Bill old?  o. Who is fifty-five?
f. Is Bill American?  p. Who is a housewife?
g. What color is Bill’s car?  q. What is Bill’s mother’s job?
h. What is green?  r. What is not black?
i. Is Bill’s car old?  s. How many brothers does Bill have?
j. Who is a mechanic?  t. Who has no sisters?

B. Write correct words in the blanks: जल्लोहि विलयिङ्गि देवीजिहिङ्गि विद्विधिङ्गि ज्ञातिङ्गि

Bill is ___. Bill is ___ years old. Bill is a ___, he is not a ___. Bill is ___, he is not ___. Bill is ___, he is not ___. Bill lives in ___. Bill has a green ___. Bill’s car is not ___, it is ___. Bill’s hat is ___. Bill’s hat is not ___, it is ___. Bill has ___ brothers and ___ sisters. ___ is fifty-four. ___ is fifty-five. ___ is a teacher. ___ is a housewife.
C. Tell a classmate about your brothers, sisters, mother, and father. (age, job, nationality, home)  יונמון
דּוֹרְגִיּוֹזָהִו

D. Write a letter to Bill and ask him some questions about his life in Canada.  בְּיִלְּרִיּוֹזָה

(17) Conversation שיחה

Practice reading this conversation out loud with your neighbor.  שִׁיחַה

Yunbumji:  How many brothers do you have?  יונמון
Dorjizhoma: I have one brother.  דּוֹרְגִיּוֹזָה
Yunbumji: What is his name?  יונמון
Dorjizhoma: His name is Dawazhiba.  דּוֹרְגִיּוֹזָה
Yunbumji: How old is he? (How old is your brother?) (How old is Dawazhiba?)  יונמון
Dorjizhoma: He is twenty. (My brother is twenty.) (Dawazhiba is twenty.)  דּוֹרְגִיּוֹזָה
Yunbumji: What is your brother’s job? (What is Dawazhiba’s job?)  יונמון
Dorjizhoma: My brother is a mechanic. (He is a mechanic.) (Dawazhiba is a mechanic.)  דּוֹרְגִיּוֹזָה
Yunbumji: Where is your brother’s home? (Where is Dawazhiba’s home?) (Where is his home?)  יונמון
Dorjizhoma: His home is Langjia. (My brother’s home is Langjia.) (Dawazhiba’s home is Langjia.)  דּוֹרְגִיּוֹזָה
Yunbumji: What is your brother’s nationality?  יונמון
Dorjizhoma: He is Tibetan.  דּוֹרְגִיּוֹזָה

Where is your brother’s home? (Where is Dawazhiba’s home?) (Where is his home?)

What is your brother’s job? (What is Dawazhiba’s job?)

What is your brother’s nationality?
Exercises ʒɾaʃʊʈʊɾa

A. Write answers to these questions: ʒɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʞɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa

a. Who has one brother?  
b. Who is Dawazhiba?  
c. Who is twenty?  
d. Who is a mechanic?  
e. Who are Tibetan?  
f. Who is Yunbumji?  
g. Who is Dajiezhooma?  
h. Who lives in Langjia?

B. Using the above dialogue, put the correct words in the blanks: ʒɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʞɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʞɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa

Dorjizhoma has ___ brother. His name is ___. He is ___ years old. He has a ___. He is a ___.  
Dawazhiba’s home is ___. Dawazhiba’s nationality is ___.

(18) Possessive Pronouns ʒɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa

Possessive pronouns are used to show ownership or possession of an object or characteristic. For example, if I have a problem, I would say, “my problem.” If you have a problem, I would say, “your problem.” ʒɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʞɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʞɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>possessive form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>my, mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>your, yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her, hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>our, ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>their, theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises ʒɾaʃʊʈʊɾa

A. Write in the missing words. There is no single correct answer. After you finish, compare your answers with another student’s. ʒɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʞɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa ʇɾaʃʊʈʊɾa

A: Is this your ____?  
B: Yes, it is. It is mine. It is my ___.  
A: Is this your ____?  
B: No, it isn’t.

A: Whose ____ is it?  
B: It’s ___.  
A: Is this ____?  
B: No, it isn’t. It’s ___.
B. Here are some words: theirs / hers / your / my / his

Choose the correct word and put it in the blanks below.

a. He wanted ____ mother.
b. They were going to drive ___ car.
c. “___ feet hurt,” I said.
e. ___ father will come to visit her.

C. Make two sentences for each of the following words: my, her, ours, their, his, your, its. When you finish, discuss your sentences with another student.

D. Poem: Who is Sad?

Who is Sad? (Elizabeth Coatsworth)

Who is sad and who is sorry?

Not the  seagull\(^1\) flying high,
not the wren\(^2\) brown as earth is,

not the  bumblebee\(^3\) buzzing\(^4\) by,
not the cat upon the doorstep\(^5\),
not the dog beside the gate-
they are neither sad nor sorry,
pride,\(^6\) ashamed,\(^7\) on time, nor late.

\(^1\)a white bird that likes to live near an ocean or sea
\(^2\)a small brown bird

\(^3\)a yellow and black insect
\(^4\)the sound that a bumblebee makes
\(^5\)the area near the door of a house
\(^6\)the feeling of thinking you are better than someone else
\(^7\)feeling unhappy about something you’ve done
b. Now write answers to these questions: དགེགས་པའི་ཐོབ་ཐོབ་དེ་བོ་འདིར་བ།

1. Do you think animals have feelings like people? If so, what kind of feelings? ཀེགས་པ་མེད་ཐོབ་ཐོབ་དེ་བོ་འདིར་བའི་དགེངས་པ་སྦེན་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ།

2. Are you ever proud? Ashamed? Late? དགེགས་པ་དགེངས་པ་འདིར་བའི་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ།

3. What is your favorite animal? Describe it to your neighbor. དགེགས་པ་དགེངས་པ་འདིར་བའི་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ

E. Free Talk: Talk for 10 minutes in English with two partners. You may talk about anything that you like, but please speak only in English! དགེངས་པ་དགེངས་པ་ཁྱབ་དཀའ་གཅིག་རིགས་པ་ནི་ཁྱབ་དཀའ་གཅིག་རིགས་པ་ནི་ཁྱབ་དཀའ་གཅིག་རིགས་པ་ནི་ཁྱབ་དཀའ་གཅིག་རིགས་པ་ནི་ཁྱབ་དཀའ་གཅིག་རིགས་པ་ནི་ཁྱབ་

(19) Colors རྟེན།

Exercises རྟེན་སློབ།

A. What colors can you think of? Make a list of colors that you know. དགེངས་པ་དགེངས་པ་འདིར་བའི་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ

B. Practice dialogues: Read through these conversations with your neighbor. དགེངས་པ་དགེངས་པ་འདིར་བའི་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ

a. A: What color is that hat?  B: It’s green.
   A: What color is that coat?  B: It’s the same color. It’s green.

b. A: Do you see that white car?  B: No, but I saw a blue bike.
   A: Oh. Where is the white car?
   B: Behind the red fence.

C. Important colors: red, orange, yellow, green, blue, purple, brown, black, white. Now, look around your classroom and write five sentences using some of these colors. (Dorji’s hat is black.) དགེངས་པ་དགེངས་པ་འདིར་བའི་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ

"red"རྟེན་"orange, yellow, green, blue, purple, brown, black, white"རྟེན་མིན་དགེངས་པ་དགེངས་པ་འདིར་བའི་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ་ཐོབ་དེར་བ（Dorji’s hat is black.）
D. What color are these objects? a flower, a cat, an apple, a tree, a jacket, an egg, a shirt.

E. Answer these questions with your neighbor. a. What color’s your coat? hat? shirt?
b. What color’s his / her / my coat? hat? shirt?
c. What is your favorite color?
d. Name three things that are the same color as your favorite color.

F. Look at this example: books / red
What color are your books? Our books are red.
Now do the following in the same way using “our.”

a. shirts / white  
b. coats / gray  
c. tickets / yellow  
d. suits / blue  
e. hats / black and gray  
f. passports / green  
g. umbrellas / black  
h. handbags / white  
i. ties / orange  
j. dogs / brown and white  
k. pens / blue  
l. cars / red  
m. dresses / green  
n. blouses / yellow

G. Look at this example: Mr. Ford / umbrella / black
What color’s Mr. Ford’s umbrella? His umbrella’s black.
Now do the following in the same way using: “‘s,” “his,” “her.”

Paul / car / blue  
Tim / shirt / white  
Miss Parker / coat / gray  
Mrs. White / carpet / red  
Frank / tie / orange  
Mr. Ford / hat / gray and black  
Mrs. Davis / dog / brown and white  
Bill / pen / green  
Dorji / suit / gray  
Stella / pencil / blue  
Zhoma / handbag / brown  
Alice / skirt / yellow
(20) **Professions**

*a. This short dialogue uses a common sentence pattern—“the same as.” You can also say “too.”*

A: What are your brothers’ jobs?
B: Bill is a teacher. Jim is a teacher. Jim has the same job. He is a teacher, too. Bill and Jim are teachers.

*b. Other common professions are doctor, lawyer, engineer, mechanic, business (man, woman), government worker, farmer, writer, hair stylist, waiter (man), and waitress (woman), reporter, and soldier.*

*c. Examples of not-so-common professions: singer, dancer, actress (female), actor (male), president, and bartender.*
Exercises

A. Look at the following. What do each of these people do? Write your answers.

a. policeman / policewoman
b. taxi-driver
c. air-hostess
d. postman
e. nurse
f. mechanic
g. barber
h. housewife
i. milkman

B. Look at this example. Do the following sentences in the same way as the example.

(mechanics) / clerks
1: What are their jobs? Are they mechanics or clerks?
2: They aren’t mechanics. They’re clerks.

a. (typists) / nurses
b. (postmen) / milkmen
c. (policewomen) / air-hostesses
d. (customs officers) / engineers
e. (barbers) / taxi-drivers
f. (engineers) / teachers
g. (policewomen) / housewives
h. (milkmen) / barbers
i. (policemen) / postmen
j. (nurses) / typists
k. (herdsmen) / farmers

C. Look at this example:

his shoes / (dirty) / clean
A: Are his shoes dirty or clean?
B: They’re not dirty. They’re clean.

Now do these in the same way. Write similar dialogues.

a. the children / (tired) / thirsty
b. the postmen / (cold) / hot
c. the barbers / (thin) / fat
d. the shoes / (small) / big
e. the shops / (shut) / open
f. his cases / (heavy) / light
g. grandmother and grandfather / (young) / old
h. their hats / (old) / new
i. the policemen / (short) / tall
j. his trousers / (short) / long
(21) **Nationalities**

\[ a. \] There are many nationalities. China, for example, has fifty-six. Here are some common nationalities. Match the nationality with the country / area:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/Area</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>People’s Republic of China</td>
<td>1. Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain / England</td>
<td>2. Canadian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States of America</td>
<td>3. American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibet, China</td>
<td>4. Tibetan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>5. British / English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>6. French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>7. German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>8. Tibetan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qinghai, China</td>
<td>9. Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tibet, China</td>
<td>10. Mongolian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>11. Salar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>12. Han</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>13. Han</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>14. Lhoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>15. Monguor (Tu)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ b. \] Sample Dialogues: Read through these with your neighbor.

**A:** Are you Tibetan?  
**B:** Yes, we are. We are Tibetan.

**A:** Are you French?  
**B:** No, we are not. We are not French. We are Tibetan.

**A:** What country are you from?  
**B:** I’m from Australia.

**A:** What nationality are you?  
**B:** I’m Japanese.
Exercises ףַּעַלְמָה

A. Make questions using the guide words as examples. 

a. This is Miss Parker. (French / Swedish)
   1: Is she French or Swedish?
   2: She isn’t Swedish. She’s French.

b. This is a robe. (Tibetan / Chinese)
   1: Is it a Tibetan robe or Chinese robe?
   2: It isn’t a Chinese robe. It’s a Tibetan robe.

C. Now do the following in the same way. 

This is a yak. (black / white)
This is Hans. (German / Italian)
This is Stella. (Spanish / Italian)
This is Dongzhi. (Hui / Tibetan)
This is Paul. (Brazilian / Greek)
This is a Fiat. (Italian / English)
This is Baatar. (Tibetan / Mongolian)
This is a Volkswagen. (German / French)
This is a tent. (big / small)
This is a Ford. (English / American)

B. Match the country with the correct nationality.

1. ___ Germany  a. Thai  6. ___ Mongolia  f. Swiss
2. ___ Singapore  b. Indian  7. ___ India  g. Russian
3. ___ Mexico  c. Korean  8. ___ Thailand  h. Mexican
4. ___ Britain  d. British  9. ___ Switzerland  i. German
5. ___ Korea  e. Singaporean  10. ___ Russia  j. Mongolian
Look at these two dialogues. Practice them with another student.

A: Are these your books?
B: Yes, they are. (No, they are not.) (No, they aren’t.)

A: This is my pencil.
B: I know. These are my pens.

Key Item ฐน:ษิร:

“This is” generally refers to one thing. “These are” generally refers to more than one thing. “They” can refer to both people and objects. It is correct to use “they” for the plural form of words. For example:

a. Are your shirts clean. Yes, they are.
b. Are your watches correct? Yes, they are.
c. My hats look pretty. They look pretty.
d. The dogs are hungry. They are hungry.

Exercise ฐน:ษิร:

Make sentences using “this is” and “these are” correctly.

Example: นิษิต

footballs (These are red footballs.)
a football (This is a football.)

a. pencils    f. classrooms
b. a pencil   g. horse
c. Tibetans   h. horses
d. a Tibetan  i. child
e. classroom  j. children

Key Item ฐน:ษิร:

“That is” generally refers to one thing. “Those are” generally refers to more than one thing.
Exercises စားခြင်း

A. Make sentences using “that is” and “those are” correctly. စားခြင်းမှု၏သောစားခြင်း “that is”နှင့် “those are”စားခြင်းမှုအား ပြောသည်။

Example စားခြင်း၏:

a cow (That is a black cow.)
cows (Those are the cows I bought yesterday.)

Example စားခြင်း၏:

a. pen       f. Tibetans       k. an egg
b. pens      g. an American    l. eggs
c. a football h. Americans      m. child
d. footballs i. an umbrella     n. children
e. a Tibetan j. umbrellas

B. Use the following words correctly in the sentences. More than one correct answer is possible.

Example စားခြင်း၏:

*this / these    *that / those    *it / they    *is / are

a. ___ is a tree. ___ are trees.
b. ___ man is a Tibetan. ___ men are Tibetans.
c. ___ is a  camel. ___ are camels.
d. ___ egg is bad. ___ eggs are bad.
e. ___ is an  airplane. ___ are airplanes.
f. ___ it a tree? ___ they trees?
g. Is ___ the train? Are ___ the trains?
h. Is ___ a ship? Are ___ ships?
i. Is ___ student Tibetan? Are ___ students Tibetan?
j. What is ___? What are ___?
k. Where ___ the tent? Where ___ the tents?

C. Use “in,” “at,” and “from” in the following sentences: စားခြင်း၏ “in,” “at,” “from” စားခြင်းအား

Example စားခြင်း၏:

a. It’s wet ___ spring and dry ___ summer.
b. Are there many Tibetans ___ your county?
c. I always study English ___ the evening.
d. I always study Tibetan ___ night.
e. I come ___ Sichuan. Do you come ___ Sichuan?
f. I go to school ___ 8:30.
g. I will go shopping ___ 1:00.
Dongzhi’s home ཛ་བོད་ཁྱེར།

Read this text with another student. གིས་ལོ་བོད་ཁྱེར་དང་བདེ་བྱུང་བོད་ཁྱེར་ངན་ོལ།

Dongzhi’s home is Rebgong. He has two sisters and one brother. Dongzhi is twenty-four and he is a postman. One sister is Lhamoyicuo. She is eighteen and she is a student. Her home is Rebgong, too. One sister is Cairangzhoma. She is twenty-five and she is a nurse. Her home is Zuganrawa. Cairangzhoma’s home is not Rebgong.

Dongzhi’s father is a teacher and his mother is a housewife. His father is fifty-one and his mother is forty-nine.

Dongzhi is very busy, he is not lazy. His job is a postman. His mother is very busy, too. Housewives are very busy. Housewives are not lazy. They are very busy. They are not lazy.

Dongzhi is tall and thin. He is not short and fat. Dongzhi’s father is tall, too. Lhamoyicuo is short and thin. She is not tall and fat. Dongzhi’s mother is fat. Dongzhi’s father is fat, too.

Lhamoyicuo and Cairangzhoma are very pretty. They are very busy, too.

Dongzhi, Dongzhi’s father, and Cairangzhoma are employees. Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi’s mother are not employees. Lhamoyicuo is a student and Dongzhi’s mother is a housewife.

Dongzhi’s friends are Tibetan and Chinese. Dongzhi is Tibetan. Dongzhi’s friends are not French. His friends are not French. His friends are Tibetan and Chinese. He has Tibetan friends and Chinese friends. Lhamoyicuo has Tibetan and Chinese friends, too.

Dongzhi’s brother is Dawazhiba. He is twenty and his home is Rebgong, too. He is not a student he is a barber. He has Tibetan and Chinese friends, too.

Dawazhiba has a new hat. It is green and it is very smart.

Dawazhiba is very busy. He is not lazy. He is tall and thin. He is not short. Dawazhiba is not fat, he is thin. Dawazhiba is Tibetan. He is not Spanish. Dawazhiba’s nationality is Tibetan. His nationality is not Spanish. Dawazhiba is Dongzhi’s brother.
Exercises

A. Write fifteen questions about this text. Next, write answers to your questions.

B. Match words in the first column with words in the second column.

a. Dongzhi’s home __
b. a teacher __
c. Dongzhi’s mother __
d. eighteen years old __
e. nurse __
f. green __
g. a barber __
h. Dongzhi’s brother __
i. her home is not Rebgong __
j. busy __
k. Dongzhi __
l. tall __
m. fat __
n. Tibetan and Chinese __

Song Number Three

“Lean On Me” is a popular and well-loved song. It talks about friendship. It says that we can help each other in difficult times and situations. A true friend is someone who cares about you and wants to help you. || “Lean On Me”
LEAN ON ME

Chorus:
Lean on me, when you’re not strong.
And I’ll be your friend.
I’ll help you carry on.
For it won’t be long,
Till I’m going to need somebody to lean on.

Sometimes in our lives
We all have pain, we all have sorrow
But, if we are wise
We know that there’s always tomorrow

Chorus
2

Please swallow your pride
If I have things that you need to borrow.
For no one can feel
Those are your needs
If you don’t let them show.

Chorus
3

Just call on me, brother, when you need a hand
We all need somebody to lean on.
I just might have a problem
That you’d understand.
We all need somebody to lean on.

Chorus

Exercise
Write answers to the following questions:

a. Who are your good friends?
b. When do your friends help you?
c. When do you help your friends?
d. Why is friendship important?
e. When was the last time you helped a friend?
f. What is friendship?
Introductions

Mr. Jackson: Come and meet our students, Mr. Richards.
Mr. Richards: Thank you, Mr. Jackson.
Mr. Jackson: This is Miss Lhamoyicuo and this is Miss Cairangzhoma.
Mr. Richards: How do you do?
Mr. Jackson: Those girls are very pretty. What are their jobs?
Mr. Richards: Miss Lhamoyicuo is a student. Miss Cairangzhoma is a teacher.
Mr. Jackson: This is Mr. Dawazhiba and this is Mr. Dongzhi.
Mr. Richards: How do you do?
Mr. Jackson: They’re students. They’re very busy. They’re not lazy.
Mr. Richards: Who is this young man?
Mr. Jackson: This is Mr. Li. He is a teacher.

Key Item

“How do you do?” is formal and rarely heard, though it continues to be taught as a basic introductory sentence. It is not incorrect and may always be used. Let’s look at the following dialogue:

Mr. Smith: John, I’d like you to meet Bill, my friend.
John: Hello, Bill, how are you?
Bill: Hello, John, it’s nice to meet you.

This is a more common, but still rather formal introduction. Now, let’s read the following more informal dialogue between people the same age and of the same social position:

Jack: Tom, this is my friend, Darrel.
Darrel: Hi, Tom, glad to meet you.
Tom: Hi, Darrel, good to meet you.
Exercises

A. Form groups of three people in your classroom. Take turns introducing each other.

B. Make groups of four people. One person will play the role of father or mother. Another person will be a son or daughter. The parent and child meet two of the child’s friends. The child then introduces the two friends to his parent.

C. When making an introduction, the relationship between the speaker and the persons being introduced is usually made clear as in the following dialogue:

Dongzhi: This is Dawazhiba. He is my friend (student / brother). And this is Dongzhi. Dongzhi is my friend (student / brother).

Dawazhiba: How do you do?

Dongzhi: How do you do?

Pronunciation Practice Four

A. Listen to your teacher. Repeat after your teacher, paying special attention to the /v/ and /f/ sounds.

B. Repeat the following words.
C. Now, your teacher will read one of the following words from the above list. Write the word that is said.

a. ___________

b. ___________

c. ___________

d. ___________

e. ___________

f. ___________

g. ___________

h. ___________

i. ___________

j. ___________

D. Although the most common way to spell the /f/ sound is with the letter “f”, there is another way to spell it. It is spelled “ph” in words of Greek origin. Sometimes the /f/ sound is also spelled “gh.”

Listen to your teacher and repeat the following words.

a. photo

b. physics

c. phone

d. elephant

e. dolphin

f. emphasize

g. graph

h. enough

i. laugh

j. cough

k. tough

(25) Dongzhi, Jobs, and Relatives

Listen to your teacher read the text. Fill in the blanks with the words you hear. A word list is at the end of each text.

Dongzhi is a _______. Lhamoyicuo is a teacher, too. Lhamoyicuo ____ Dongzhi are married. They ______ two children. Dongzhi is _____ and Lhamoyicuo is twenty-eight, too. Dongzhi is ___________ and Lhamoyicuo is Tibetan, too. Dongzhi’s ______ is Jiegu. Lhamoyicuo’s home is Jiegu, ____.

They have two children. This is Dawazhiba. Dawazhiba is Dongzhi’s _____. Dawazhiba is Lhamoyicuo’s son, too. Dawazhiba is ____. Dawazhiba has no job. Dawazhiba is a ________.

This is Cairangzhoma. Cairangzhoma is Dongzhi’s __________. Cairangzhoma is Lhamoyicuo’s daughter, too. Cairangzhoma is ___. Cairangzhoma has no ______. Cairangzhoma is a child.

This is Dongzhi’s father. He is fifty-five. He is a ________. His home is Jiegu. This is Dongzhi’s _________. She is fifty-five, too. ____ home is Jiegu, too. Dongzhi’s mother is a farmer.

a. and

b. child

c. daughter

d. farmer

e. five

f. have

g. her

h. home

i. job

j. mother

k. son

l. teacher

m. three

n. Tibetan

o. too

p. twenty-eight
Lhamoyicuo is very _______. She has two children. She works _____ hard.
Dongzhi is very tired, too. He is __ teacher and he has two _____________. Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi are tired ______ they are very busy.

Cairangzhoma and Dawazhiba are children. ______ are short. They are not ______.
Dongzhi and ____________ are tall. They are not short. They are _____, too. They are not ______.

Dongzhi has seventy-five ___________. Lhamoyicuo has sixty-six students. They are teachers. Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo are teachers.

Dongzhi _____ a new hat. It is _______. It is very smart. Lhamoyicuo has a ____ skirt. It is brown. It is very ________, too.

Dongzhi has two brothers. One is ____ and one is thirty. Dongzhi’s brothers are teachers. Lhamoyicuo has ___ brother. He is fifteen and he is a student. Dongzhi has ___ sisters. Lhamoyicuo has no sisters.

a. a  f. has  k. smart  p. tired
b. because  g. Lhamoyicuo  l. students  q. twenty
c. black  h. new  m. tall  r. very
d. children  i. no  n. they
e. fat  j. one  o. thin

Exercises

A. Write answers to the following questions. When you finish, compare your answers to those of another student.

a. What is Dongzhi’s nationality?
b. How old is Dongzhi?
c. How old is Lhamoyicuo?
d. How old is Dongzhi’s father?
e. How old is Dongzhi’s mother?
f. How old is Dawazhiba?
g. How old is Cairangzhoma?
h. What is Dongzhi’s job?
i. What is Lhamoyicuo’s job?
j. What is Dongzhi’s father’s job?
k. What is Dongzhi’s mother’s job?
l. Where is Dongzhi’s home?
m. Where is Lhamoyicuo’s home?
n. Where is the children’s home?
o. Where is Dongzhi’s father’s home?
p. Where is Dongzhi’s mother’s home?
q. Are Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo tired?
r. How many children do Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo have?
s. How many students do Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo have?
t. How many brothers does Dongzhi have? What are their jobs?
u. How many brothers does Lhamoyicuo have? What is his job?
v. How many sisters does Dongzhi have?
w. How many sisters does Lhamoyicuo have?
B. Ask and answer: Ask one of your friends the ten questions below. To each question a student should answer “Yes, I did,” or “No, I didn’t.” Write down their answers.

What did your friend do the day before yesterday?

a. Did you get up before 7 o’clock?
b. Did you wash your hands and face?
c. Did you walk to school?
d. Did you get to the classroom early?
e. Did you work hard all day?
f. Did you play any sports?
g. Did you do any housework?
h. Did you do any homework?
i. Did you eat lunch?
j. Did you go to bed early?

Write the student’s answers here:

1. ______________________________________________
2. ______________________________________________
3. ______________________________________________
4. ______________________________________________
5. ______________________________________________
6. ______________________________________________
7. ______________________________________________
8. ______________________________________________
9. ______________________________________________
10. ______________________________________________
Dear Dorjisu,

Hi, how are you? I'm busy. I have a lot of homework and am busy with my friends.

In school we are learning about China. I chose to do a report on Sichuan province. Yesterday I went shopping. I bought a red and blue shirt. I like it very much. My mother got a new job. She is now a secretary. Please write soon!

Love,

Lily

Miss Dorjisu
Sichuan College of Education
Chengdu, Sichuan 610041
People’s Republic of China

a. The postcard is from Lily to Dorjisu.
b. Dorjisu is in the USA.
c. Lily bought a red and green shirt.
d. Lily’s mother is a secretary.
e. Lily is not busy in school.
f. Lily will go shopping soon.
g. Dorjisu is Lily’s friend.
h. Lily will write a report about Sichuan.
(26) **Dongzhi’s Home, Animals, and Relatives**

They have some animals. They have one two yaks, five sheep, two goats, one horse, one cow, one mule, and one donkey. They have no camels.

Dongzhi is fifty-five and Lhamoyicuo is fifty-five, too. Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi’s home is Dongku. They have two children. Their son is Dawazhiba. He is eighteen and he is a student. Dawazhiba is a young man, he is not an old man. Their daughter is Cairangzhoma. She is twenty-five and she is a doctor. Cairangzhoma is married, too, and has two children, too. One child is four and one child is three. Her children have no jobs. They are children. Cairangzhoma is very busy. She is not lazy. Cairangzhoma is a pretty young woman, she is not an old woman.

Lhamoyicuo’s brother is very old. He is not young. He is seventy-five. He is a farmer. His home is Tianzhu, Gansu Province. He has two cows, one donkey, and two mules. He does not have many animals. He has five children. One is fifty-nine. One is fifty-seven. One is fifty-five. One is fifty-one. And one is forty-seven. His children are farmers, too. Their home is Tianzhu, too. They are farmers, too.

**Exercise**

Write answers to the following questions:

a. Where is Dongzhi’s home?
b. Where is Lhamoyicuo’s home?
c. How old is Dongzhi?
d. How old is Lhamoyicuo?
e. Do Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo have any animals?
f. How many animals do Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo have?
g. How many children do Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo have?
h. How old is Dongzhi’s and Lhamoyicuo’s son?
i. What is Dongzhi’s and Lhamoyicuo’s son’s job?
j. How old is Dongzhi’s and Lhamoyicuo’s daughter?
k. What is Dongzhi’s daughter’s name?
l. What is Cairangzhoma’s job?
m. Is Cairangzhoma old?

n. Is Cairangzhoma pretty?

o. Is Dawazhiba old?

p. Where is Lhamoyicuo’s brother’s home?

q. Is Lhamoyicuo’s brother young?

r. How many animals does Lhamoyicuo’s brother have?

s. How many children does Lhamoyicuo’s brother have?

t. What is Lhamoyicuo’s brother’s job?

u. How old are Lhamoyicuo’s brother's children?

v. What jobs do Lhamoyicuo’s brother’s children have?

w. What is Dawazhiba’s job?

(27) The Three Singers

Here is a play about three animals. They live on a farm, but they want to leave and go to sing in the big city.

The characters are a rooster, a donkey, a cat, a narrator, other animals (from off stage), and robbers (also off stage).

Play Number One: The Three Singers

Scene One: In the farmyard

Narrator: This is an old story about three animals, three musical animals: a rooster, a donkey, and a cat. Each animal has a beautiful voice - or thinks it has a beautiful voice! The animals are unhappy in the farmyard. They want to leave. They want to go and sing in the Big City, where everyone will hear their beautiful voices. This morning the first musical animal, Mr. Rooster, is in the farmyard. He is carrying a suitcase.

Rooster: Cock-a-doodle-doo! Cock-a-doodle-doo! (He walks up and down the farmyard.) Oh, my voice is beautiful! My voice is very beautiful this morning. Cock-a-doodle-doo!! (The other animals are offstage.)

Hen: Cluck, cluck, cluck! Time to get up! Cluck, cluck!

Cow: Moo, moo! Good morning to you, good morning to you!

Duck: Quack, quack! Get out of the sack, quack, quack!
Dog:  Ruff, ruff! Wake up now. Ruff, ruff!
Cat:  Meow, meow, Good morning to you!
Donkey:  Hee haw, hee haw! Good morning Mr. Rooster! (Then he sees a suitcase.) Oh! What is that?
Rooster:  This? (He holds up his suitcase.) This is my suitcase.
Donkey:  I see. Are you going someplace? Are you leaving, Mr. Rooster?
Rooster:  Yes, yes, I am! I’m leaving. I’m going to the Big City.
Donkey:  To the Big City, Mr. Rooster? Why are you going to the Big City? Why are you leaving the farmyard?
Rooster:  Oh, Mr. Donkey, this farmyard is small, very small for me! I have a beautiful voice-cock-a-doodle-doo! And I’m going to sing in the Big City!
Donkey:  Yes, Mr. Rooster, your voice is beautiful. Very beautiful! And my voice is beautiful too! Listen! Hee haw, hee haw! My voice is beautiful too.
Rooster:  Yes, yes! You have a beautiful voice, Mr. Donkey. Come to the Big City with me. We can sing together. Cock-a-doodle-doo!
Narrator:  So, Mr. Donkey goes to get his suitcase. The two friends are going to go the Big City together. But before they leave, Mrs. Cat comes along.
Cat:  (She enters and sees Rooster and Donkey. They are carrying their suitcases.) Oh! Oh! Meow, Meow, meow, Good morning to you!
Rooster:  Good morning, Mrs. Cat!
Donkey:  Good morning, Mrs. Cat!
Cat:  (She points to their suitcases.) What’s that? And that?
Rooster:  Our suitcases, Mrs. Cat.
Donkey:  Suitcases!
Cat:  Are you two leaving? Are you going to go someplace?
Rooster:  Yes, we are! Cock-a-doodle-doo! We have beautiful voices! This farmyard is too small for us. We’re going to the Big City to sing.
Donkey:  Yes, we are! Hee haw, hee haw!
Cat:  Oh Mr. Rooster! Mr. Donkey! Your voices are beautiful. Very, very beautiful! And my voice, my voice is beautiful too. Listen to my voice, meow, meow! Meow, meow!
Rooster:  Indeed, indeed Mrs. Cat. What a beautiful voice! Come with us to the Big City. We can sing together!
Cat:  Oh yes, Yes, yes! (She runs out and comes back with her suitcase.)
Narrator:  Mrs. Cat goes to get her suitcase. The three friends say goodbye to their friends in the farmyard. (Rooster, Donkey, and Cat wave goodbye to the other farmyard animals.)
Rooster:  Goodbye! Cock-a-doodle-doo!
Donkey:  Hee haw, bye-bye!
Cat:  Meow, meow! Goodbye to you!
Scene Two: On the road

Narrator: So the three friends go along the road to the Big City. They walk along... and walk along... and walk along. Now it is night and they are very tired. They see a farmhouse on the road. (The three animals enter slowly.)

Donkey: Oh, I’m tired! Hee... haw...
Rooster: Oh, I’m tired and hungry! Cock-a-doodle...do-o-o...
Cat: Oh, I’m tired and hungry and sleepy! Meow...M-m-m...
Rooster: (He looks up and sees a farmhouse.) Oh, look! Look! Cock-a-doodle-doo! Look, look!
Cat: What? Meow! What is it?
Donkey: Hee haw? What? What?
Rooster: There! There! See? There’s a farmhouse! (The Rooster points.) There’s a light in the window!
Cat: No-no! I can’t see! (The three animals go to the window.) Can you see in the window, Mr. Donkey?
Donkey: (He looks in the window.) Yes-yes! I can see!
Narrator: The Cat and the Rooster are too short to look in the window, but the Donkey is tall. He looks in the window and sees three men. They are sitting at a table counting money. Each man has a large bag of money and is counting his gold.

Rooster: (He whispers loudly.) Mr. Donkey! Mr. Donkey!
Donkey: Sh-h-h-h-h-h!
Rooster: What do you see in there, Mr. Donkey?
Rooster: Do you see any food? Do you? I’m hungry, Mr. Donkey!
Cat: Yes, we’re hungry, Mr. Donkey.
Donkey: Sh-h-h-h-h-h!
Cat: Do you see any beds, Mr. Donkey? I’m sleepy!
Donkey: No, no. I don’t see beds or food! There are three men and (he looks in the window again) they are counting MONEY! MONEY!
Rooster: MONEY?
Cat: MONEY!
Donkey: Yes, it is money.
Rooster: Hm... I have a plan.
Cat: A plan? A plan, Mr. Rooster?
Donkey: A plan? What is it?
Rooster: Yes, let’s sing! Let’s sing for them... We have beautiful voices...
Cat: Yes, beautiful voices!
Donkey: Sing, and then what?

Rooster And then, the men will give us MONEY for singing!

Donkey: And food? I’m hungry!
Cat: And a bed? I’m sleepy!
Rooster: Please Mr. Donkey and Mrs. Cat. Let’s sing!
Donkey: OK, let’s sing!
Rooster: One, two, three, Cock-a-doodle-doo! Hello to you!
Cat: Meow, meow! Hello to you!
Donkey: Hee haw, hee haw! Hee haw!
Robbers: Listen, what is it? What is it?
Oh! Oh! Help! Help!
They’re going to kill us!
Police! Police! Help! (There is the sound of robbers running away.)

Rooster रोस्टर
Cat वटा
Donkey डोन्के
Robbers रोडर्स
Scene Three: In the farmyard  རྒྱལ་འབྲིས་གནས་པ་  བོད་སྲིད་མེད་པའི་སྣང་དཔོན་

Narrator: And so, dear friends, the robbers heard the three musical animals and they ran away! Yes, they ran away and they are still running. Our three singers took their bags of money and went back to the farmyard. (The three animals come back on stage. They are carrying three bags of money.)

Rooster: Cock-a-doodle-doo, good morning to you!
Cat: Meow! Meow! We’re happy now! So happy now!
Donkey: Hee haw, hee haw! What a beautiful day! What a beautiful day!
Exercise རྣམ་རྒྱལ།

With a partner or in a group, make a list of animals and what they “say” in Tibetan. Then match animals in column one with what they “say” in English in column three. Add as many animals as you can.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Sound in Tibetan</th>
<th>Sound in English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cat</td>
<td>meow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rooster (cock)</td>
<td>cock-a-doodle-doo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hen</td>
<td>cluck-cluck</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duck</td>
<td>quack-quack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dog</td>
<td>ruff-ruff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cow</td>
<td>moo-moo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>donkey</td>
<td>hee-haw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>baa-baa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(སྐད་པ་བོད་འཁོར་བོར་བེད་རྐྱེན་ལ། རྡོ་རྗེ་བཙོད་སུམ་བཞིན་སྐར་ཚིག་ཞིག་དེ་ཡོང་བར་ཡིན་)
Key Words and Phrases

These words are from the play. Match them with a correct definition.

a. farmyard 1. feeling that you need to rest
b. farmhouse 2. feeling that you need to eat
c. suitcase 3. a place where people live
d. voice 4. sound of talking
e. hungry 5. a kind of box, people put clothes inside
f. sleepy 6. a place where animals stay
g. tired 7. a cry that you need assistance
h. musical 8. return
i. to go someplace 9. make a person die
j. to wake up 10. stop sleeping
k. to kill someone 11. move to another place
l. to go back 12. nice sounds
m. Help! Help! 13. exhausted

Exercises

A. Form a group and read the play, with each person playing one of the roles.

B. After you have read the play in your group, act it out.

C. Write ten questions about the play. When you finish writing your questions, write the answers. Next, find another student and ask them the questions you have written. Write what the student tells you.
D. Look at this example: KeyEvent

Refrigerator in the kitchen / black

There’s a refrigerator in the kitchen. The refrigerator is black.

Now do these in the same way. Write your answers.

a. cup on the table / clean

b. box on the floor / large

c. glass on the sideboard / empty
d. knife on the plate / sharp

e. fork on the tin / dirty
f. bottle in the refrigerator / full

g. pencil on the desk / blunt

h. churn by the door / new

E. Look at this example: KeyEvent

(books) / on the dressing-table / cigarettes / near that box

A: Are there any books on the dressing-table?

B: No, there aren’t any books on the dressing-table. There are some cigarettes.

A: Where are they?

B: They’re near that box.
Now do these in the same way. Write your dialogues. When you finish, compare what you have
done to another student’s dialogues.


a. (books) in the room / magazines / on the television
b. (ties) / on the floor / shoes / near the bed
c. (glasses) / on the counter / bottles / near those tins
d. (newspapers) / on the shelf / tickets / in that handbag
e. (forks) / on the table / knives / in that box
f. (cups) on the radio / glasses / near those bottles
g. (cups) / in the kitchen / plates / on the cooker
h. (glasses) / in the kitchen / bottles / in the refrigerator
i. (books) / in the room / pictures / on the wall
j. (chairs) / in the room / armchairs / near the table

Writing

From now on, keep a diary in English. Write in your diary at least three times a week. You may
write about what you did that day, how you are feeling, or what you are thinking about. Your teacher
will collect this periodically.

Here is an entry from one student’s diary.

May 21, 1995 (Sunday)

Today I didn’t have any classes. I slept late. I had breakfast at ten-thirty. I ate one
breadbun and drank some tea. Two friends visited. We went shopping, but we didn’t buy
anything. Tonight I must study. I have an examination tomorrow in my English class.
(28) **A Classroom** 

This is your classroom. It is a large classroom. It is not a small classroom. There are many desks in the classroom. The desks are brown. There are many stools. They are brown stools. There are two blackboards in the classroom. They are not small blackboards, they are large blackboards. The blackboards are black. They are not white. 

There are two windows in the room. The window on the left is open, but the window on the right is closed. There is a clock on the wall, near the door. The door is closed but one window is open. There are some pencils and some flowers on the table. The students are sitting. They are looking at Mr. Dongzhi. The students have a book. The book's name is "English for Tibetans." 

Exercises 

A. Talk with your classmate about your classroom. 

B. Write answers to these questions: 

a. Is the classroom small?  
b. What are in the classroom? (desks, stools, blackboards, etc.)  
c. What color are the desks?  
d. What color are the stools?  
e. How many blackboards are in the classroom?  
f. What color are the blackboards? 

c. Are there many stools in the classroom?  
d. Are there many desks in the classroom?  
e. Where are the tables?  
f. What color are the stools and tables? 

D. Read this text and then write answers to the questions: 

This is a classroom in a language school. There is a teacher in the room and there are some other men and women in the classroom. They are students. The teacher’s name is Dongzhi. The students are Tibetan. There is a table in the room. The teacher is near the table. The door is behind the teacher. There are two windows in the room. The window on the left is open, but the window on the right is closed. There is a clock on the wall, near the door. The door is closed but one window is open. There are some pencils and some flowers on the table. The students are sitting. They are looking at Mr. Dongzhi. Mr. Dongzhi is teaching English. The students want to learn English. They like English. The students have a book. The book’s name is "English for Tibetans."
Look for the following words in the puzzle below. Words can be found to the right (→), to the left (←), up (↑), down (↓), and diagonally (↑↓ and ↓↑). When you find a word, circle it. Good luck!

Words to find

a. blackboard
b. eraser
c. chalk
d. stool

e. desk
f. windows
g. classroom
h. door

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Kitchen

This is Mrs. Parker’s kitchen. It is a large kitchen. It is not a small kitchen. There is a refrigerator in the kitchen. It is a blue refrigerator. The refrigerator is blue, it is not red. The refrigerator is on the right. There is an electric cooker in the kitchen. The cooker is yellow. It is on the left. There are two small tables in the middle of the room. There are two bottles on the tables. The bottles are full. They are not empty. There is a cup on the table, too. The cup is clean, it is not a dirty cup.

Exercises

A. Write answers to the following questions:

a. Is Mrs. Parker’s kitchen small?  
g. Where are the two bottles?
b. Where is the refrigerator?  
h. Are the bottles empty?
c. What color is the refrigerator?  
i. Where is the cup?
d. Where is the electric cooker?  
j. Is the cup dirty?
e. Is the cooker green?  
k. Is the cup clean?
f. Where are the two small tables?

B. What does the kitchen in your home look like? First, describe your kitchen to a friend. Next, write a description of your friend’s kitchen.

C. Write answers to these questions:

a. Do you like cooking?  
b. What is your favorite dish?  
c. How do you prepare it?

D. These words are useful to describe cooking. Look up the words in your dictionary if you do not know what they mean.

a. bake__________________________  
m. peel__________________________
b. beat__________________________  
n. refrigerate____________________
c. blend__________________________  
o. roast__________________________
d. boil___________________________  
p. sauté__________________________
e. chill___________________________  
q. simmer________________________
f. chop___________________________  
r. slice___________________________
g. cook___________________________  
s. steam__________________________
h. grind__________________________  
t. stir___________________________
i. fry_____________________________  
u. stir-fry________________________
j. knead__________________________  
v. toast___________________________
k. melt___________________________  
w. whip___________________________
l. mix___________________________
E. Match the following foods with their correct English names: 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Food</th>
<th>English Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>jiaozi</td>
<td>a. rock sugar (crystal sugar) tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>wanzi</td>
<td>b. roasted barley flour mixed with sugar, butter, and hot tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>tsamba</td>
<td>c. steamed stuffed dumplings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>ganban</td>
<td>d. intestines filled with blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>baozi</td>
<td>e. boiled stuffed dumplings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>blood sausage</td>
<td>f. long noodles with meat sauce</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(30) Another Kitchen

This is a kitchen. It is a large kitchen. It is not a small kitchen. There is a refrigerator in the kitchen. It is a small refrigerator. It is not a large refrigerator. The refrigerator is on the right. It is not in the middle. It is a blue refrigerator. It is not a white refrigerator. The refrigerator is new. It is not an old refrigerator.

There is a table in the kitchen. It is a small table. It is not a big table. It is not a new table. It is an old table. The table is yellow. The table is in the middle of the room. There are two glasses in the kitchen. The two glasses are on the table. The glasses are full. They are not empty.

There is an electric cooker in the kitchen. It is a large electric cooker. It is not a small electric cooker. The electric cooker is red and it is new. It is not yellow and it is not old. The electric cooker is on the left. It is not on the right. It is not in the middle of the room.

There is a plate in the kitchen. It is on the table. It is a large plate. It is not a small plate. The plate is white. The plate is not black.

There is a knife in the kitchen. It is on the plate. It is a small knife. It is not a large knife. It is not a long Tibetan knife. The knife is new. It is not old. The small knife is on the plate.

There are two spoons in the kitchen. They are in the glasses. The two spoons are in the glasses. The two spoons are in the glasses. The two spoons are in the glasses. The two spoons are in the glasses. The two spoons are in the glasses.
Exercises

A. Write fifteen questions about this text. When you finish, ask another student the questions. Write what the student tells you.

b. Write in the correct word for the text below.

This is a ______, it is not a bedroom. It is a _____ kitchen, it is not a large kitchen. In the kitchen there is a __________, there isn’t a bed. The refrigerator isn’t large, it is ______. The refrigerator isn’t on the left, it’s on the _____. The refrigerator isn’t white, it’s _____. The refrigerator isn’t ___, it’s new.

The table in the kitchen isn’t _____, it is small. The table isn’t new, it’s ____. The glasses in the kitchen are on a ______. The glasses aren’t empty, they are ____.

The cooker in the kitchen is an _______ cooker. It is on the ____, it isn’t on the right.

(31) Comprehension Check

a. Can you understand this conversation?

b. Read this conversation with a friend. One of you will act as Dongzhi and the other will act as Dawazhiba.
Dongzhi: My father is forty-five. He is a farmer.
Dawazhiba: Does he have many animals?
Dongzhi: No, he doesn’t. He does not have many animals. My father has only a few animals.
Dawazhiba: What animals does he have?
Dongzhi: My father has three sheep, one cow, one yak, three goats, and one horse. He has no camels.
Dawazhiba: How old is your mother and what is her job?
Dongzhi: My mother is a farmer and she is forty-one. What is your father’s job and how old is he?
Dawazhiba: My father is a farmer and he is fifty.
Dongzhi: Does your father have many animals?
Dawazhiba: No, he doesn’t. He does not have many animals. My father does not have many animals. He has one mule, one yak, two goats, and five sheep. He does not have any donkeys. He has no horses.
Dongzhi: Is this your classroom?
Dawazhiba: Yes, it is. It is my classroom. It is a big classroom. It is not a small classroom. It has many desks and stools. The desks and stools are brown. My classroom has two blackboards. They are black. They are not white.
Dongzhi: How many desks are there in the classroom?
Dawazhiba: There are fifty-two desks in the classroom.
Dongzhi: How many stools are there in the classroom?
Dawazhiba: There are fifty-two stools in the classroom.
Dongzhi: How many blackboards are there in the classroom?
Dawazhiba: There are two blackboards in the classroom. Is your hat new?
Dongzhi: Yes, it is. My hat is new. It is a new hat. My hat is not old.
Dawazhiba: What color is your hat?
Dongzhi: My hat is brown. It is not white, it is not blue. It is a brown hat.
Dawazhiba: Your hat is very smart!
Dongzhi: Thank you very much! Is your shirt new?
Dawazhiba: Yes, it is. It is a new shirt. It is not an old shirt, it is new. My shirt is new. My shirt is white.
Dongzhi: Your shirt is very smart, too!
Dawazhiba: Thank you very much! Dongzhi, what is your nationality?
Dongzhi: My nationality is Tibetan. I am a Tibetan. Dawazhiba, are you Tibetan, too?
Dawazhiba: Yes, I am Tibetan. I am Tibetan, too. My nationality is Tibetan.
Dongzhi: Good-bye, Dawazhiba.
Dawazhiba: Good-bye, Dongzhi.
Exercises

A. Write twenty questions about this conversation. When you finish, ask another student your questions. Write the answers.

B. Look at the following statements. Some are true and some are false. Decide which are true and which are false. If the sentence is false, write “F”. If it’s true, write “T”. If a statement is false, explain why.

a. ____ Dawazhiba studies in Qinghai.
b. ____ Dongzhi is a student.
c. ____ Dawazhiba’s home is not Yunnan.
d. ____ Dongzhi has two brothers and three sisters.
e. ____ Dongzhi’s father is a teacher.
f. ____ Dawazhiba and Dongzhi are in a classroom.
g. ____ One of Dawazhiba’s sisters is twenty-three.
h. ____ The classroom has three blackboards.
i. ____ Dawazhiba is Tibetan, but Dongzhi is not.
j. ____ Dongzhi’s hat is not blue.
k. ____ Dongzhi’s shirt is not very smart.
l. ____ Dongzhi and Dawazhiba are old, they are not young.
This is Dongzhi’s home. It is a ______ home. This is Dongzhi’s living ______. It is a living room, it is not a kitchen. His living room is _______. It is not small. There is a television in the room. The ______ new. It is not old. The television is big. It is not a ______ television, it is a large television. There are some magazines, books, and _______ on the television. The books are English books. The magazines are ________ magazines. The newspapers are Chinese newspapers. There are ___ armchairs in the room. The armchairs are large and they are ______. The armchairs are not old and small. They are new and ______. The armchairs are near the _______. The armchairs are brown. They ___ very smart. There is a radio in the room. It is a small _______. It is not a large radio. The radio is black and it is an old radio. It is not a new radio. The radio is near the _______. There are some books ____ the radio. They are English books. One book is a Tibetan-English _______. One book is “English for Tibetans.” Dongzhi is an _______ student. He studies English. He has many English books. Dongzhi also studies Tibetan and _______. There are some pictures in the room. The pictures are on the _______. There are three _______ in the room.

This is Dongzhi’s bedroom. It is a large _________. This is Dongzhi’s bed. It is a big bed. There are some _______ on the floor. They’re near the bed. They are Dongzhi’s shoes. They are _____ shoes and they are black. This is Dongzhi’s dressing-table. There are some ______ on Dongzhi’s dressing-table. The cigarettes are near a ______. The box is a new box. It is a ______ box, it is not a large box.

This is Dongzhi’s kitchen. It is a large ________. This is Dongzhi’s refrigerator. It is a new refrigerator. There are some bottles in the _________. They are empty. The bottles are empty. They are not full. This is Dongzhi’s cooker. It is a _____ cooker. There are some plates on the _______. They are clean plates. They are not dirty _______. There are some forks, spoons, and knives on the table in the kitchen. They are in a red box. The forks, spoons, and _______ are in a red box on the table. The ______ is in the middle of the kitchen.

Dongzhi is a student. His home is _________. He studies at Qinghai Education College. He is twenty-one. His is not married. He has no children. He has two brothers and two ______. One brother is a teacher. He teaches Tibetan. He is ______ and he has three children. His home is Xining, too. He _______ Tibetan at Qinghai Education _______. He is thirty. One brother is a student. He is a _______ at Qinghai Teachers’ University. He is _______. He studies math. He is not married and he ______ no children.

One sister is a student. She is ___________. One sister is twenty-five. She is a _______. She is
married and she has one _______. Her daughter is _____. She has no _____, she is a child.

These are Dongzhi’s friends. Dawazhiba is a student at Qinghai Education College. He studies ______. He does not study English. Dawazhiba’s _____ is Yigazei. His father is a farmer. He does not have many _________. He has one yak, one horse, two sheep, and one goat. He has no _________. Dawazhiba is Tibetan. His nationality is Tibetan.

Word list for the above paragraph: 漢語
a. animals  d. College  g. fifteen  j. job  m. sisters  q. two
b. camels  e. doctor  h. has  k. married  n. student  r. Xining
c. child  f. eighteen  i. home  l. math  o. teaches

Now, read the rest of the text silently.

This is Lhamoicyuo. Her nationality is Tibetan. She is Dongzhi’s friend, too. She is a student at Qinghai Education College, too. She studies English. Her home is Mhalo. She is nineteen. She is very pretty. Her father is a farmer. He does not have many animals. He has one donkey, one mule, and two cows.

Dongzhi has many friends. His friends are students. They study at Qinghai Education College and Qinghai Teachers’ University. His friends are Tibetan and Chinese. Dongzhi has no French friends. His friends’ homes are Gansu, Qinghai, and Yigazei.

Dongzhi’s father is an engineer. He is not a postman. He is very busy. He is fifty-three. He is tall, he is not short. He is thin, he is not fat. Dongzhi’s father has a new hat. It is a brown hat. It is not a black hat. It is not a red hat. It is a brown hat.

Exercises ခလော့ကောင်း

A. Write answers to these questions.

a. Who has a new hat?
b. What is not red?
c. Where is the new refrigerator?
d. Who is a student?
e. Who is twenty-five?
f. Where are there some bottles?
g. Where are some Tibetan magazines?
h. Who studies at Qinghai Education College?
i. Who studies math?
j. Who is a farmer?
k. Who has one donkey, one mule, and two cows?
l. What are on the dressing-table?
m. What color is the radio?
n. What are new and big?
o. What are not dirty?
p. Who has no camels?
q. What color is the box on the table?
r. Who is fifty-three.

•83•
B. Read the following sentences. Some are true and some are false. If a sentence is false, explain why.

a. Dongzhi’s home is small.
b. Lhamoyicuo is Dongzhi’s brother.
c. Dongzhi’s father is not a postman.
d. Dongzhi’s home is Lhasa.
e. The cooker is red.
f. The newspapers are Chinese newspapers.
g. Dongzhi is a math student.
h. Dongzhi is married and he has two brothers and two sisters.
i. The refrigerator has some bottles.
j. The knives on the table are in a red box.
k. The doctor is married.

Pronunciation Practice Five ཞུས་ལོགས་ཀྱི་ལུགས་གོང་མཁྱེན་

A. /dh/ and /th/ are made by putting the tip of the tongue between the upper and lower teeth to partially block the flow of air from the lungs. Both sounds can appear at the beginning, middle, or end of a word. Repeat the following words after your teacher: /dh/ མེད / th/ མེད

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/dh/</th>
<th>/th/</th>
<th>/dh/</th>
<th>/th/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. the</td>
<td>a. thanks</td>
<td>5. there</td>
<td>e. thumb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. this</td>
<td>b. thing</td>
<td>6. mother</td>
<td>f. nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. that</td>
<td>c. thousand</td>
<td>7. leather</td>
<td>g. math</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. though</td>
<td>d. thorough</td>
<td>8. smooth</td>
<td>h. month</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Listen to your teacher pronounce the following words. Listen for the differences. ཞུས་ལོགས་ཀྱི་ལུགས་གོང་མཁྱེན་

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>བཏགས་ལོགས་ཀྱི་ལུགས་གོང་མཁྱེན་</th>
<th>བཞིན་ལོགས་ཀྱི་ལུགས་གོང་མཁྱེན་</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. thigh</td>
<td>a. thy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. either</td>
<td>b. ether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. this’ll</td>
<td>c. thistle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. cloth</td>
<td>d. cloth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. wreathe</td>
<td>e. wreathe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. math</td>
<td>g. math</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. soothe</td>
<td>h. month</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. Listen carefully to your teacher. You will hear two words. Circle “S” if the two words are the same or “D” if they are different. ཞུས་ལོགས་ཀྱི་ལུགས་གོང་མཁྱེན་

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>བཏགས་ལོགས་ཀྱི་ལུགས་གོང་མཁྱེན་</th>
<th>བཞིན་ལོགས་ཀྱི་ལུགས་གོང་མཁྱེན་</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. teeth, teethe</td>
<td>a. teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. lather, ladder</td>
<td>b. ladder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. math, mat</td>
<td>c. math</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. loathe, loaf</td>
<td>d. loaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. thistle, thistle</td>
<td>e. thistle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. soothe, sooth</td>
<td>f. sooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. thanks, tanks</td>
<td>g. thanks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. leather, let her</td>
<td>h. leather</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(33) **Mother and Daughter, Teacher and Student**

*a.* Lhamoyicuo is Cairangzhoma’s daughter. Cairangzhoma is Lhamoyicuo’s mother. Cairangzhoma is the mother. Lhamoyicuo is the daughter.

Cairangzhoma: Come in, Lhamoyicuo and please shut the door. Your bedroom is very untidy.

Lhamoyicuo: What must I do, Mother?

Cairangzhoma: Open the windows and air the room. Then put these clothes in the wardrobe. Then make the bed. Dust the dressing-table. Then sweep the floor.

*b.* Dawazhiba is Dongzhi’s student. Dongzhi is Dawazhiba’s teacher. Dongzhi is a student. Dawazhiba is a teacher.

Dawazhiba: Come in, Dongzhi. Shut the door please. This classroom is very untidy.

Dongzhi: What must I do, Mr. Dawazhiba?

Dawazhiba: Open the windows and air the classroom. Then dust the stools and desks. Then clean the blackboards. Then sweep the floor.
Exercises

A. Who are Dawazhiba, Dongzhi, Lhamoyicuo, and Cairangzhoma? Write a sentence that explains who each of them is.

B. Write the “actions” in these two texts (come, shut). Do you understand what these actions mean? Discuss them with another student. Perform the actions.

C. Imagine that you are a teacher and that your neighbor is a student. The classroom needs to be cleaned. What would you say to the “student?”

D. Begin each of the following sentences with Shamba:

E. Look at this example:

Shut the door.

Match the words in the second column with the actions in the first column. More than one answer is possible.
(34) **Enjoy Yourself**

Read this text with a neighbor:  

Danzen: What are you going to do this evening, Shamba?  
Shamba: I’m going to meet some friends, Dad.  
Danzen: You mustn’t come home late. You must be home at half past ten.  
Shamba: I can’t get home so early, Dad! Can I have the key to the front door, please?  
Danzen: No, you can’t.  
Lhamoyicuo: Shamba is 18 years old, Danzen. He’s not a baby. Please give him the key. He always comes home early.  
Danzen: Oh, all right! Here you are. But you mustn’t come home after a quarter past eleven. Do you hear?  
Shamba: Yes, Dad. Thanks, Mum.  
Lhamoyicuo: That’s all right, dear. Good-bye. Enjoy yourself.

**Exercises**

A. Write answers to the following questions:  

a. What is Shamba going to do this evening?  
b. Is Shamba going to school this evening?  
c. Must Shamba come home late?  
d. What time must Shamba be home?  
e. Can Shamba get home at half past ten?  
f. Can Shamba get home at half past nine?  
g. How old is Shamba?  
h. Is Shamba 19?  
i. Is Shamba a baby?  
j. Does Shamba want the key?  
k. Does Zhunmaa want to give Shamba the key?  
l. Does Lhamoyicuo want Zhunmaa to give Shamba the key?
B. Choose the correct answer:

a. Where is / are Tom?
b. What is / are you doing?
c. What did you do / done?
d. Yesterday, I go / went to class.
e. They are / is ill.
f. I likes / like studying English.
g. They sees / see twenty yaks on the mountain.
h. Tomorrow, I goes / go home.
i. Yesterday, I went / goes home.

j. They were reads / reading the books.
k. We enjoys / enjoyed the party Saturday night at school.
l. I like to drank / drink milk tea.
m. They are eats / eating mutton.
n. She taking / takes her child to the park.
o. Last week, you were / was looking at the beautiful grassland.
p. He likes to gave / give children money.
q. She is going to stay / staying at home, she is not going / goes to the party.
r. They like / likes to driving / drive their new cars.
s. I standing / stood for three hours on the bus.
t. He is emptying / empties the bowl.
u. He likes to climbing / climb mountains.

v. I am going to calls / call him tomorrow.
w. Yesterday, Lhamoyicuo boiled / boiling some mutton.
x. Please listen / listening to these new words.
y. That little girl can turn / turning on the radio.
z. The day before yesterday, I sharpens / sharpened three red pencils.
aa. Every morning, Lhamoyicuo cleaning / cleans the room.
bb. I like to aired / air my room in the morning.
cc. She is going to arrives / arrive the day after tomorrow.
dd. Please answering / answer the telephone.
e. When are you going to telephoned / telephone the doctor?
ff. In summer, I like to swam / swim in the Yellow River.

gg. I enjoying / enjoy riding horses and yaks.

hh. He works / working in the morning.
ii. We are going to meet / meeting this evening.

**Key Items**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>He</th>
<th>She</th>
<th>They</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>Dongzhi</th>
<th>The boys</th>
<th>The teacher</th>
<th>The cat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. "ed" suffixes added to "ing" suffixes, "ed" suffixes to "e" suffixes, "ing" suffixes to "ed" suffixes: go - goes, going - gone, went; drink - drinks, drinking - drunk, drank; give - gives, giving - given, gave; stand - stands, standing - stood; swim - swims, swimming - swum, swam.
C: Match the questions (a-x) with the correct answer (1-23).

a. What did he do?  
b. What is he doing?  
c. What was he doing?  
d. What were they doing?  
e. What did they do?  
f. What are they doing?  
g. What am I doing?  
h. What was I doing?  
i. What did I do?  
j. What did she do?  
k. What was she doing?  
l. What is she doing?  
m. What did he do?  
n. What was he doing?  
o. What is he doing?  
p. What did we do?  
q. What were we doing  
r. What are we doing?  
s. What was Dongzhi doing?  
t. What is Dongzhi doing?  
u. What did Dongzhi do?  
v. What is the teacher doing?  
w. What did the teacher do?  
x. What was the teacher doing?

1. (Dongzhi is writing.)  
2. (Dongzhi was writing.)  
3. (Dongzhi wrote.)  
4. (He is writing.)  
5. (He is writing.)  
6. (He was writing.)  
7. (He wrote a letter.)  
8. (He wrote.)  
9. (She is writing.)  
10. (She was writing.)  
11. (She wrote.)  
12. (The teacher is writing.)  
13. (The teacher was writing.)  
14. (The teacher wrote.)  
15. (They are writing.)  
16. (They were writing.)  
17. (They wrote.)  
18. (We are writing.)  
19. (We were writing.)  
20. (We wrote.)  
21. (You are writing.)  
22. (You were writing.)  
23. (You wrote.)

D: Yes, I did.”

a. Did you get up before 7 o'clock?  
b. Did you wash your hands and face?  
c. Did you walk to the classroom?  
d. Did you get to the classroom early?  
e. Did you work hard all day?  
f. Did you play any sports?  
g. Did you do any housework?  
h. Did you do any homework?  
i. Did you eat lunch?  
j. Did you go to bed early?  
Dongzhi is a student. He is a chemistry student at Southwest Nationalities University. He is a first year student. He studies chemistry.

This is his dormitory room. It is a big room, it is not a small room. There are six beds in the room. The beds are very tidy. There are six students in the room. There is a table in the room. The table is a small table. It is a brown table. The table is near the window. There is one window in the room. It is a small window. It is a clean window. It is not a dirty window.

There are two chairs in the room. They are old chairs, they are not new chairs. One chair is near the door. One chair is near the table.

There are two stools in the room. The stools are on the right. They are small stools, they are not large stools.

There are some shoes on the floor. They are Dongzhi’s shoes. Dongzhi’s shoes are near Dongzhi’s bed.

There are some cigarettes on the table. They are Dongzhi’s friend’s cigarettes. There are some trousers on Dongzhi’s bed. They are on the bed, near a blue shirt. The trousers are brown. They are new trousers and they are very smart.

There is a tin on the table, too. It is Dongzhi’s food tin. There is a fork in the tin. There is a spoon in the tin, too. The fork and the spoon are Dongzhi’s. They are Dongzhi’s fork and spoon. Dongzhi’s dormitory room has no television and no radio. There are six glasses on the table. One glass is tall glasses. They are not small glasses.

There is a knife on the table, too. It is in a red box.

There are no plates in the room.

There are some pictures on the walls. There are three pictures on the walls.

Dongzhi’s home is Ganzi. He has two brothers and three sisters. His brothers and sisters are students. They are young, they are not old.

Dongzhi’s mother is a farmer. She is forty-three. She is very busy, she is not lazy. She has six children.

Dongzhi’s father is dead. Dongzhi’s mother is very busy.

Dongzhi is not married and he has no children.

Dongzhi’s mother has a few yaks, sheep, goats, pigs, and chickens.

This is Dongzhi’s mother’s home. It is a large home, it is not a small home. The home has several rooms. There are some fields near the home. There is a small temple near the home, too. There are no sheep near the home. There is a large courtyard in the middle of the home. There are some plates on a table. They are clean. They are clean plates. They are not dirty plates. There is a large Tibetan knife on the table, too. The home is very nice and tidy.

This is Dongzhi’s mother’s brother. He is a farmer. He is in the home. Dongzhi’s mother is in the home, too. He is fifty-one. He has a brown horse. His horse is near the home. His home is Jiegu, too. He has one child. Dawazhiba is his son. Dawazhiba is twenty-five and he is a teacher. He teaches Tibetan. Dawazhiba has one son, too. Dawazhiba’s son is two. He is very small. He is not a student, he is a baby. Dawazhiba has many friends. His friends’ homes are Jiegu. They are herdsmen, too. They are busy.
Exercises

A. Write twenty questions about this text. When you finish, ask another student to answer your questions. Write down the student’s answers.

B. Fill in the following chart. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of thing(s)</th>
<th>How many?</th>
<th>Where is it? / Where are they?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beds</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>dormitory room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>window</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chairs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stools</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoes</td>
<td>some</td>
<td>on the floor/near Dongzhi’s bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trousers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fork</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glasses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red box</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plates</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pictures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sheep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goats</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pigs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chickens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temple</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
C. Fill in the following chart. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dongzhi</td>
<td>We don’t know.</td>
<td>student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dongzhi’s mother</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dongzhi’s father</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dongzhi’s mother’s brother</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawazhiba</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. Here is a game called “Truth or Dare.” Take a piece of paper and divide it in two sections. On one of the pieces, write a question. It should begin, “Is it true....?” For example, “Is it true that you like to eat?” “Is it true that you can sing well?” or “Is it true that you have a boyfriend / girlfriend?” The teacher will collect your papers and put them in a bowl. Then, on your other piece of paper, write a dare. It should say, “I dare you to...” For example, “I dare you to dance in the classroom.” or “I dare you to say hello to everyone in the room.” Then the teacher will collect your papers. Everyone takes a turn, coming to the front of the classroom and choosing either a truth or a dare. You must choose a paper, read it in front of the class, and either answer the question or do the dare.
What are they doing?

Read this conversation with a friend:

Lhamoyicuo: Where’s our daughter, Cairangzhoma?
Dongzhi: She’s on the mountain, Lhamoyicuo?
Lhamoyicuo: What is she doing?
Dongzhi: She’s herding sheep.
Lhamoyicuo: How many sheep is she herding?
Dongzhi: She is herding six sheep.
Lhamoyicuo: Whose sheep are they?
Dongzhi: They are our sheep, Lhamoyicuo.
Lhamoyicuo: Is our son, Dazheng, on the mountain, too?
Dongzhi: Yes, he is.
Lhamoyicuo: What’s he doing?
Dongzhi: He’s riding a black horse.
Lhamoyicuo: I beg your pardon? Who is riding a horse?
Dongzhi: Dazheng is.
Lhamoyicuo: What about the dog?
Dongzhi: The white dog is on the mountain, too. It’s running across the grass. It’s running after a brown and white cat.
Exercises

A. Write answers to these questions. When you finish, compare your answers to those of another student.

a. Who is herding sheep?
b. Who is riding a horse?
c. Who is Lhamoyicuo?
d. Who is Dongzhi?
e. Where is Dazheng?
f. Where are Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi?
g. Where is the white dog?
h. Where is Cairangzhoma?
i. What color is the horse?
j. What color is the dog?
k. What color is the cat?
l. What is the cat doing?
m. What is the dog doing?

B. Make a drawing showing where the people and animals are in this text. When you finish, show it to another student and discuss it.

C. Look at this example:

Miss Grey / emptying the basket / typing a letter
A: What is Miss Grey doing? Is she emptying the basket?
B: No, she isn’t emptying the basket. She’s typing a letter.

Now do these in the same way. Write your dialogues. When you finish, compare what you have written to what another student has written.

a. Mr. Dongzhi / cleaning his teeth / opening the window
b. Miss Cairangzhoma / making mutton soup / making milk tea
c. My mother / shutting the door / making the bed
d. The dog / drinking its milk / eating a sheep bone
e. Mrs. Ford / dusting the dressing-table / cooking a meal
f. Bessie / making the bed / sweeping the floor
g. Tim / reading a magazine / sharpening a pencil
h. The girl / turning on the light / turning off the tap
i. The boy / cleaning his teeth / putting on his shirt
j. Miss Jones / putting on her coat / taking off her coat
(37) Dongzhi’s Family འབུམ་ལམ་དཔོན་

This is Dongzhi’s family. Dongzhi’s home is Xining. His father is typing a letter. One sister is emptying a basket. One brother is hot, he is opening a window. Dongzhi’s mother is making the bed. She is very busy. One sister is shutting the door. Dongzhi’s dog is eating a bone. A sister is looking at a picture. One brother is reading a magazine. One brother is cleaning his teeth. One sister is dusting the dressing-table. His grandmother is cooking a meal. Dongzhi’s cat is black. It is drinking its milk. One sister is sweeping the floor. Dongzhi is sharpening a pencil. Dongzhi’s grandfather is turning on the light. Dongzhi’s sister is turning on the tap. Dongzhi’s brother is putting on his shirt. Dongzhi’s mother’s friend is taking off her coat.

Exercises རྩུས་ཐོབ་

A. In this exercise there are many verbs. These verbs describe actions that are happening now. What would the verbs be if the action had happened yesterday? What would the verbs be if the action was going to happen next week? Fill in the following chart. The first one has been done for you. ག་པའི་ཐལ། འབུམ་ལམ་དཔོན་


•96•
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Now</th>
<th>Yesterday</th>
<th>Next Week</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. typing</td>
<td>typed</td>
<td>will type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. emptying</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. opening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. making</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. shutting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. eating</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. looking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. reading</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. cleaning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. dusting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k. drinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l. sweeping</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m. sharpening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. turning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o. putting on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. taking off</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Rewrite the text, describing what happened yesterday.  

C. Rewrite the text, describing what will happen next week.

D. Write a letter to an imaginary friend. Write about the activities you’ve done in the past week and things you plan to do in the next week.

E. “Opposites” are things that are very different. Give opposite words for the words listed below.

Example: up - down.
It is a very fine day today. There are many clouds in the blue and white sky but the hot sun is shining. Mr. Dawazhiba is with his family today. They are riding horses on the grassland. There are some yaks on the grassland. They are big and brown yaks. Mr. Dawazhiba and his wife are looking at them. Zhoma, Mr. Dawazhiba and Mrs. Cairangzhoma’s daughter, are looking at a big sheep. The large white sheep is walking on the grassland. Dazheng, Mr. Dawazhiba and Mrs. Cairangzhoma’s son, are looking at an airplane. The airplane is a small airplane and it is flying over the grassland.

Exercises

A. Match the words on the right with the correct answer on the left:

| a. Dawazhiba | 1. fine |
| b. horses | 2. large and white |
| c. clouds | 3. where the yaks are |
| d. son | 4. big and brown |
| e. airplane | 5. looking at an airplane |
| f. hot | 6. looking at a sheep |
| g. Zhoma | 7. the sun |
| h. Dazheng | 8. flying |
| i. yaks | 9. many |
| j. grasslands | 10. they are being ridden |
| k. sheep | 11. he is looking at yaks |
| l. today | 12. with his parents and sister |
Song Number Four .song.n.4

YOU ARE MY SUNSHINE

The other night dear as I lay sleeping
I dreamed I held you in my arms.
When I awoke dear, I was mistaken.
And I hung my head and cried.

You are my sunshine, my only sunshine.
You make me happy when skies are gray.
You’ll never know dear how much I love you.
Please don’t take my sunshine away.

You told me once dear, you really loved me,
And no one else could come between.
But now you’ve left me, and loved another.
Yes, you’ve shattered all my dreams.

Exercises  ş呼吸

A. When do you think a person should leave his or her lover? indsay.n.548

B. Tell another student about a person you know who left his or her lover? Do you think that this was all right? Or, do you think the person was wrong? Explain why you think this way. indsay.n.548

C. In this song, do you think that the singer is happy or sad? Explain why you think so. indsay.n.548
(39) **What are they Doing?**

Dawazhiba: Cairangzhoma, what are they doing?
Cairangzhoma: They are cooking. The two men are cooking on an electric cooker.
Dawazhiba: What is that boy doing? What is that girl doing?
Cairangzhoma: The boy and girl are sleeping. They are sleeping.
Dawazhiba: What are those two men doing? Are they sleeping?
Cairangzhoma: No, they are not sleeping. They are shaving. The two men are shaving.
Dawazhiba: Cairangzhoma what are those two children doing? Are they eating?
Cairangzhoma: No, they are not eating. They are crying.
Dawazhiba: What are those two dogs doing? Are they eating?
Cairangzhoma: Yes, they are eating. Those two dogs are eating.
Dawazhiba: What are those two employees doing?
Cairangzhoma: They are typing. They are typists. They are not lazy.
Dawazhiba: What are those two students doing?
Cairangzhoma: They are doing homework.
Dawazhiba: What are those two women doing?
Cairangzhoma: They are very busy. They are washing dishes.
Dawazhiba: What are those two birds doing?
Cairangzhoma: Those two little birds are flying over the big river.
Dawazhiba: What are Mr. Huardon and Mrs. Dorjisu doing?
Cairangzhoma: They are walking over the big bridge.
Dawazhiba: What are they doing?
Cairangzhoma: They are waiting. They are waiting for the bus.
Dawazhiba: What are those two children doing?
Cairangzhoma: They are jumping over the wall.
Dawazhiba: What are those two young men doing?
Cairangzhoma: They are riding horses on the mountain.
### Exercises

A. Fill in the table with the missing words. The first one has been done for you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person (Who?) / Animal What?</th>
<th>Number (How many?)</th>
<th>Activity (What are they doing? What is she/he doing?)</th>
<th>Location (Where)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>men</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>cooking</td>
<td>don’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>girl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>two</td>
<td>shaving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dogs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employees</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>students</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>women</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr. Huardon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs. Dorjisu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young men</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawazhiba</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairangzhoma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
B. Write at least ten questions about this text. When you finish, ask another student to answer your questions. Write down the student’s answers.

C. Choose the correct answers (a, b, c, or d):

1. Is this dress yours? No, it isn’t. It’s _______. a) my b) me c) mine d) hers

2. _______ pen is it? a) Who b) Whose c) Who’s d) What

3. The bag is _______. Can you carry it? a) heavy b) light c) old d) new

4. Have a cup of milk tea. _______. a) OK b) No c) You’re welcome d) Thank you

5. What books are they? They are_____. a) English books b) their students’ c) ours d) theirs

6. The boy is too ______. He can’t go to school. a) old b) young c) big d) light

7. Are the _____ Dorjsu’s or Dawazhiba’s? a) skirt b) hat c) pants d) dress

8. Could you _______ these clothes to your bedroom? a) have b) take c) put d) find

9. The bottle is empty. Could you give me a _____ one? a) new b) old c) full d) empty

D. Fill in the blanks with the correct pronouns. Remember, pronouns are “me,” “you,” “him,” “her,” “it,” “us,” and “them.”

a. That’s my watch. Give _____ my watch please.

b. He can fix your bike. Give ____ to _____ please.

c. We can’t find the books. Can you help _____?

d. These are your clothes. Can you take _____?

e. It’s Cairangzhouma’s hat. Give ___ to ____.

f. Give the two girls some pencils. Give ____ some, too.

g. Don’t worry. We can help ____.

h. _____ are busy.
Look at the following sentences. They are not in the correct order. Rewrite the sentences so they are in the correct order. When you finish, compare your text with another student’s.

1. The valley is between two large hills. There are many large adobe houses. Many white sheep and brown yaks are on the hills. This is a photograph of our village. The yaks and sheep are eating grass. The village is on a river. There are many trees in the valley. Our village is in a valley.

2. He is our son. My wife and I are riding horses along the banks of the river. Dongzhi is swimming across the river. Here is another photograph of the village. There is a boy in the water. My wife is riding a white horse and I am riding a white horse, too. He is Dongzhi. We are on the left.

3. Some of them are going into the forest. This is the school building. Here is another photograph. The forest is on the right. It is beside a forest. Some Tibetan children are coming out of the school building.

Exercises

a. What is your favorite photograph? Tell another student about it.

b. Write a description of your favorite photograph.

c. Picture description: Two students work together. Each should have a piece of paper and a pen. You should sit back-to-back with another student. You should not be able to see each other. Then student number 1 thinks of a photograph. Student #1 must describe this photograph to student number 2. Listening to student #1’s description, student #2 should try to draw the picture on their paper. After student #1 is finished describing, they should look at #2’s drawing. Does it look right? Then the two students switch and student #2 describes a photograph for student #1 to draw.

d. Are you the same or different? Two people work together and write down three ways they are the same and three ways they are different. Then discuss your lists together.

Photographs

Exercise
(41) Where are they going? Where are they? সে কোথায় চলছেন? সে কোথায় চলছেন?

A: Where is that man going?
B: He is going into a bookstore.

A: Where is that woman going?
B: She is going out of a bookstore.

A: Where is that small boy?
B: He is sitting beside his mother.

A: Where is that woman?
B: She is sitting beside her son.

A: Where are the mother and son sitting?
B: They are sitting on a park bench.

A: Where are the man and woman going?
B: They are walking across the street. The man and woman are walking across the street.

A: Where are the cats going?
B: They are running along the wall. The cats are running along the wall.

A: Where are the children?
B: They are jumping off a tree.
A: Where is the man?
B: He is walking between two policemen.

A: Where is the girl?
B: She is sitting near a tree.

A: Where is the airplane?
B: It is flying under the bridge.

A: Where is the airplane?
B: It is flying over the bridge.

A: Where is the family?
B: They are sitting on the grass.

A: Where is the man?
B: He is reading in his chair.

A: Where is the woman?
B: She is knitting in her chair.
Exercises

A. Make as many sentences as you can using “who” as the first word. For example, “Who is going into a bookstore?”

B. Make as many sentences as you can using “what are” and “what is” as the first words. Examples: “What is the man doing?” and “What is the airplane doing?”

C. When you finish, compare your sentences with another student’s. Next, answer the questions with the other student.

D. Find the mistakes in the sentences below and correct them:

a. What she wearing? She wearing black pants and a red blouse.

b. Don’t closing the window. The boy is write.

c. Are you cleaned the door? No, I are cleaning the blackboard.

d. They stays at home in Sundays.

e. We also likes Beijing duck.

f. The Tibetan people very friend is.

g. He teach his friends Tibetan.

h. I work hard six day a week.

E. Free talk: Practice speaking English with one partner for 15 minutes.
(42) Making a Bookcase

Dawazhiba: You’re working very hard, Dongzhi. You are very busy. You are not lazy. What are you doing now?

Dongzhi: I’m making a large bookcase. Give me that small hammer please, Dawazhiba.

Dawazhiba: Which small hammer? This one?

Dongzhi: No, not that one. That is a big hammer. Please give me the small blue hammer.

Dawazhiba: Here you are.

Dongzhi: Thanks, Dawazhiba.

Dawazhiba: What are you going to do now, Dongzhi?

Dongzhi: I’m going to paint it.

Dawazhiba: What color are you going to paint it?

Dongzhi: I’m going to paint it pink.

Dawazhiba: Pink!

Dongzhi: This bookcase isn’t for me. It’s for my daughter, Lhamoyicuo. Pink’s her favorite color.

Dawazhiba: How old is Lhamoyicuo, Dongzhi?

Dongzhi: She’s twelve. This bookcase is for her bedroom.
Exercises རུས་སྤྲུད།

A. Answer these questions using a complete sentence and the correct verb tense.

a. Who worked?
b. Who was very busy?
c. Who was not lazy?
d. What was Dongzhi doing?
e. Who was making a large bookcase?
f. Who gave a small hammer to Dongzhi?
g. Who took the small hammer?
h. Who painted the bookcase?
i. Who was the bookcase for?
j. Who likes the color pink?
k. Who was twelve years old?

B. Sit with one other student. You are going to practice using future, present, and past tenses. Take out a pencil. One student will give the pencil to the other student, who will take the pencil. Use these expressions in describing what you will do, what you are doing, and what you have done:

Future
a. will give / take
b. will be giving / taking
c. will have given / taken
d. are going to give / take

Present
a. am giving / taking
b. give / take

Past
a. gave / took
b. have given / taken
c. was giving / taking
(43) Which...  automát

1: Look at this example: 

(this blue) / that red
A: Give me a book please.
B: Which one? This blue one?
A: No, not this blue one. That red one.
B: Here you are.
A: Thank you.

Now do these in the same way. Write your dialogues.

a. cup / (this dirty) / that clean
b. glass / (this empty) / that full
c. bottle / (this large) / that small
d. box / (this big) / that small
e. tin / (this new) / that old
f. knife / (this sharp) / that blunt
g. spoon / (this new) / that old
h. fork / (this large) / that small

2: Look at this example:

glasses / on the shelf
A: Give me some glasses please.
B: Which ones? These?
A: No, not those. The ones on the shelf.

Now do these in the same way. Write your dialogues.

a. pens / on the desk
b. ties / on the chair
c. spoons / on the table
d. plates / on the sideboard
e. cigarettes / on the television
f. boxes / on the floor
g. bottles / on the dressing-table
h. books / on the shelf
i. magazines / on the bed
j. newspapers / on the radio
(44) Are going to do... གཞོ་བཟོ་པོ་འཐད་

Dongzhi: What are you going to do? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m going to herd sheep. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you doing now? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m herding sheep. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you going to do? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m going to eat some mutton. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you doing now? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m eating some mutton. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you going to do? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m going to swim in the river. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you doing now? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m swimming in the river. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you going to do? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m going to ride this horse. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you doing now? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m riding this horse. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you going to do? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m going to run across the field. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་
Dongzhi: What are you doing now? རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
Dawazhiba: I’m running across the field. ་བོ་མེད་པའི་དཔེ་བཞིན་

Exercises ལྟ་མགྲོ།

A. This text uses these activities: རྟེ་ཐོབ་དང་འཛིན་ཆོས་ཞིང་
a. herd  b. eat  c. swim  d. ride  e. run

Use “will” to write about what Dawazhiba is going to do tomorrow. Use these five verbs. (Tomorrow, Dawazhiba will herd sheep.) Write your sentences. ལྟོག་བཞིན་དོན་དཔེ་བཞིན་དཔེ་བཞིན་ཞིང་
(Tomorrow, Dawazhiba will herd sheep.)
B. Use “-ed” to talk about what Dawazhiba did yesterday. Use these five verbs. Write your sentences. (Yesterday, Dawazhiba herded sheep.) The past tense of “eat” and “swim” are “ate” and “swam.” Ask your teacher to give examples of other verbs that have a past tense that does not end in “-ed.”

“eat” “swim” ‘ate’ ‘swam’

Song Number Five  Balekchagor

A young man sings this song. He is a sailor. He is missing his girlfriend, who is far away. He is asking the wind to blow so his ship will soon return to his home. He wants to see his girlfriend again.

“Bonnie” might be his girlfriend’s name. “Bonnie” also means “lovely.”

MY BONNIE
My Bonnie lies over the ocean
My Bonnie lies over the sea
My Bonnie lies over the ocean
Oh bring back my Bonnie to me

Bring back, bring back
Oh bring back my Bonnie to me, to me
Bring back, bring back
Oh bring back my Bonnie to me

You winds have blown over the ocean
You winds have blown over the sea
You winds have blown over the ocean
And brought back my Bonnie to me

And bring back my Bonnie to me

Exercise  Sowonko

Write answers to these questions:

a. Did the young man see his girlfriend?

b. Where was the sailor’s girlfriend?

c. “Ocean” and “sea” mean the same thing. How many oceans can you name? Where are they?

d. Have you ever missed someone very much? Who? When? How did you feel when you saw them again?
A Countryside Home

Listen to your teacher read the text. Fill in the missing words. After the text is a word list.

Dongzhi lives in the ___________. He has a large home. The home is ______ of adobe. Dongzhi and his wife, Cairangzhoma, made the ______. Dongzhi and Cairangzhoma live in Jiegu. The countryside is very ___________ in spring. There are many green _______. There are many families who live in Jiegu. Dongzhi ____ Cairangzhoma are very happy to live in the countryside. Dongzhi is a _________ and Cairangzhoma is a farmer, ____.

Dongzhi and Cairangzhoma have one _____. His name is Dawazhiba. Dawazhiba is one _____ old. He is a big ________ baby. Dongzhi is twenty-five and Cairangzhoma is __________. They are Tibetan. Their nationality is Tibetan. Now it is __________.

Exercise

Match the words in the two columns. More than one answer is possible.

Exercise

Pronunciation Practice Six

A. The sounds of /l/ and /r/ are sometimes confusing for Tibetan learners of English. Listen to your teacher. Repeat after your teacher and notice the different spellings for /l/ and /r/.
B. Listen to your teacher. Repeat the following words and see if you can hear the difference between the word pairs.

- \text{low} \quad 1. \text{row} \quad \text{e. lip} \quad 5. \text{rip} \quad \text{i. fly} \quad 9. \text{fry}
- \text{list} \quad 2. \text{wrist} \quad \text{f. collect} \quad 6. \text{correct} \quad \text{j. glass} \quad 10. \text{grass}
- \text{belly} \quad 3. \text{berry} \quad \text{g. clue} \quad 7. \text{crew} \quad \text{k. lace} \quad 11. \text{race}
- \text{lied} \quad 4. \text{ride} \quad \text{h. tile} \quad 8. \text{tire} \quad \text{l. dill} \quad 12. \text{deer}
- \text{lung} \quad 13. \text{rung}

C. Listen to your teacher. He or she will read only one of the italicized words. Circle the word you hear.

- \text{Did you collect / correct the papers?}
- \text{We've made a mistake. This is the wrong load / road.}
- \text{He witnessed the most famous crime / climb of the century.}
- \text{Let me light / right the candle for you.}
- \text{We could hear the clash / crash of weapons far away.}
- \text{It's my turn to get the beer / bill.}
- \text{The prince's loyalty / royalty was questioned by the prime minister.}

D. There are a number of words in which the letter “l” is silent, that is, it is not pronounced. Repeat these words with a silent “l.”

- \text{folk}
- \text{yolk}
- \text{talk}
- \text{walk}
- \text{chalk}
- \text{stalk}
- \text{salmon}

E. Practice saying these sentences slowly and correctly:

- \text{She sells sea shells on the sea shore.}
- \text{Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers. How many peppers did Peter Piper pick?}
- \text{The rabid rabbit ran *round the roses.}
- \text{Thirty-three thin thorns were in the thicket.}
- \text{The poor fool threw a mule, pole, tool, stool, and some wool into the cool full pool and then pulled them out.}
A Bus Ride

Dongzhi and Cairangzhoma are on a bus. They are riding a bus. The bus has many people.

Dongzhi: Is that large brown bag very heavy?
Cairangzhoma: Yes, it is. It is very heavy.
Dongzhi: I beg your pardon.
Cairangzhoma: Yes. This bag is very heavy. It is not light.
Dongzhi: Here! Put it on this bus seat. Where are you going?
Cairangzhoma: Thank you very much. This bag is very heavy! I’m going to my mother’s home.
Dongzhi: Where is your mother’s home?
Cairangzhoma: She lives in Jiegu. My mother is a farmer.
Dongzhi: What’s in your large bag?
Cairangzhoma: I have some mutton for my mother. It is very good mutton. I have some barley flour for my father. It is new barley flour. I have some pink soap for my sister. She likes pink. Pink is her favorite color. I have a bar of chocolate for my brother. I have some cheese for my grandfather. I have two pounds of sugar for my grandmother. I have two bricks of tea for my mother’s brother. And I have some tobacco for my father.

Are you hungry Dongzhi?

Dongzhi: Yes, I am very hungry.
Cairangzhoma: Here is some mutton. Please eat this mutton.
Dongzhi: Thank you very much. This is very good mutton!
Cairangzhoma: Yes, it is. I cooked the mutton this morning.
Dongzhi: You are a good cook!
Cairangzhoma: Thank you!
Dongzhi: How many brothers do you have?
Cairangzhoma: I have one brother. He is twenty-five.
Dongzhi: Is he married?
Cairangzhoma: Yes, he is married. He has two children. They are boys.
Dongzhi: What is his job?
Cairangzhoma: He is a farmer. What is your name?
Dongzhi: My name is Dongzhi?
Cairangzhoma: Where are you going?
Dongzhi: I’m going to Jiegu, too.
Cairangzhoma: What is your job?
Dongzhi: I’m a student. I study at middle school. I’m a second year student.
Cairangzhoma: How old are you?
Dongzhi: I am fourteen. What is your name?
Cairangzhoma: Cairangzhoma.
Dongzhi: What is your job?
Cairangzhoma: I’m a student, too. I study in Xining. I study Chinese, English, geography, chemistry, and physics. Your Tibetan clothes are very smart, Dongzhi.
Dongzhi: Thank you. My mother made them. Your Tibetan clothes are also very beautiful. Did your mother make them?
Cairangzhoma: No. I made them.
Dongzhi: Are you tired?
Cairangzhoma: Yes, I am tired.
Dongzhi: Please sit here.
Cairangzhoma: Thank you very much! I am very tired.
Exercise

A. Write ten sentences about this text. Write your answers. When you finish, ask another student the questions you have written. Write the student’s answers. Then ask another student the questions you have written. Write the student’s answers.

B. Read the following sentences. Decide if each sentence is true or false. If it is false, be able to explain why. Write ten sentences about this text. Write your answers. When you finish, ask another student the questions you have written. Write the student’s answers. Then ask another student the questions you have written. Write the student’s answers.

a. ___ Cairangzhoma and Dongzhi are not students.

b. ___ Dongzhi is older than Cairangzhoma.

c. ___ The mutton was cooked this morning.

d. ___ The tobacco is for Dongzhi’s father.

e. ___ Pink is Cairangzhoma’s favorite color.

f. ___ Cairangzhoma made her Tibetan clothes.

g. ___ Dongzhi is a good cook.

h. ___ The barley flour is for Dongzhi’s father.

i. ___ Cairangzhoma’s mother lives in Jiegu.

j. ___ Dongzhi asks Cairangzhoma to sit by him.

k. ___ Cairangzhoma and Dongzhi are both students.

l. ___ Dongzhi has a large brown bag.

m. ___ Cairangzhoma is a middle school student.

n. ___ Dongzhi is wearing beautiful Tibetan clothes.

o. ___ Dongzhi is very tired.

p. ___ Cairangzhoma has no brothers.
A man named Vingo spent three years in jail. Before he left prison, he wrote a letter to his wife. He wrote, “If you still love me, tie a yellow ribbon around the tree near our house. If I don’t see a yellow ribbon, I will stay on the bus and I will try to forget you.” This song is about this story.

**TIE A YELLOW RIBBON ’ROUND THE OLD OAK TREE**

1
I’m coming home I’ve done my time.
Now I’ve got to know what is and isn’t mine.
If you received my letter telling you I’d soon be free,
Then you’ll know just what to do
If you still want me,
If you still want me.

*Chorus*
Oh, tie a yellow ribbon ’round the old oak tree.
It’s been three long years
Do you still want me?
If I don’t see a ribbon ’round the old oak tree,
I’ll stay on the bus, forget about us,
Put the blame on me,
If I don’t see a yellow ribbon ’round the old oak tree.

2
Bus driver, please look for me.
’Cause I couldn’t bear to see what I might see.
I’m really still in prison and my love, she holds the key.
A simple, yellow ribbon’s what I need to set me free,
I wrote and told her, “Please...”

*Chorus*

**Exercises**

A. Are the following statements true or false. Write “T” if the sentence is correct and “F” if it is not.

a. ___ The singer is out of jail.
b. ___ If his wife loves him, she will wear a yellow ribbon in her hair.
c. ___ The wife doesn’t want her husband to return.
d. ___ The husband still loves his wife.
e. ___ The husband is returning from a vacation.
f. ___ The husband has been in jail for three years.
g. ___ The husband is afraid to look out the window.
h. ___ The yellow ribbon will be on a tree.

B. Write an end to this story. Begin with: “The bus is now close to the man’s home...” You can make the story have a happy or a sad ending. **‘Cause I couldn’t bear to see what I might see.**

A man named Vingo spent three years in jail. Before he left prison, he wrote a letter to his wife. He wrote, “If you still love me, tie a yellow ribbon around the tree near our house. If I don’t see a yellow ribbon, I will stay on the bus and I will try to forget you.” This song is about this story.
Read these questions and answers:

*Is there a passport on the table? Yes, there is. There is a passport on the table.
*Is there milk in the bottle? Yes, there is. There is milk in the bottle.
*Is there a milk bottle on the table? Yes, there is. There is a milk bottle on the table.
*Is there milk in the kitchen? Yes, there is. There is milk in the kitchen.
*Is there a spoon on the plate? Yes, there is. There is a spoon on the plate.
*Is there a tie on the chair? Yes, there is. There is a tie on the chair.
*Is there a chair in the room? Yes, there is. There is a chair in the room.
*Is there a loaf of bread on the table? Yes, there is. There is a loaf of bread on the table.
*Is there bread in the kitchen? Yes, there is. There is a loaf of bread in the kitchen.
*Is there a hammer on the table? Yes, there is. There is a hammer on the table.
*Is there a box of tea in the room? Yes, there is. There is a box of tea on the table in the room.
*Is there a vase in the room? Yes, there is. There is a vase on the radio in the room.
*Is there a suit in the bedroom? Yes, there is. There is a suit in the wardrobe.
*Is there tobacco in the living room? Yes, there is. There is tobacco on the table in the living room.
*Is there chocolate in your bag? Yes, there is chocolate in my bag.
*Is there cheese in your home? Yes, there is cheese in my home. The cheese is in a bag on the table.
*Is there a newspaper in your home? Yes, there is a newspaper in my home. It is on the television in the living room.
*Is there a car on the bridge? Yes, there is a car on the bridge.
*Is there soap on the dressing table? Yes, there is soap on the dressing table.
*Is there a bird in the tree? Yes, there is a beautiful small blue bird in the tree.

Exercises

A. Match the words in the two columns. More than one correct answer is possible.

| a. passport | 1. in the tree |
| b. bottle | 2. on the dressing table |
| c. milk | 3. on the bridge |
| d. spoon | 4. in the room |
| e. tie | 5. on the chair |
| f. chair | 6. on the plate |
| g. loaf of bread | 7. in the home |
| h. hammer | 8. in a bag |
| i. box of tea | 9. small and beautiful |
| j. vase | 10. on the table |
| k. suit | 11. in the kitchen |
| l. tobacco | 12. on the radio |
| m. chocolate | 13. on the television |
| n. cheese | 14. in the wardrobe |
| o. newspaper | 15. in the living room |
| p. car | 16. in the bedroom |
| q. soap | 17. in the bottle |
| r. bird | 18. in the tree |

B. Write as many questions as you can about this text. Next, write your answers.
(48) The Singing Dog རུ་རུ་སྤྲོད་ལུགས་བཞི་བཟའི་གཞག

Put these paragraphs in the correct order to make a story.

1. _____ They have finished moving the animals. Now, the rich man will give Dongzhi some money. The rich man has a dog. The rich man says, “Dog, do not talk.” The rich man is gone. Dongzhi and the dog are alone in the rich man’s large home. The dog is singing a song. “Give me some food. I will tell you a secret. Give me some food. I will tell you a secret.”

2. _____ This is Jiegu many years ago. A mother and her son live here. They have no money. They are very poor. They live in the countryside. Their home is a brown adobe house. They have no cattle, no yaks, no sheep, no goats, no camels, and no fields. They have no animals. They eat roots.

3. _____ Dongzhi is surprised. The dog can speak Tibetan! Dongzhi gives some food to the dog. The dog is hungry. The dog is eating the food. The bread is very good. The dog is happy. The dog tells Dongzhi, “Ask the rich man for me. Do not ask for money.” The rich man returns. He asks Dongzhi, “What do you want?” Dongzhi says, “I want the dog. I do not want money.” The rich man is surprised. He gives Dongzhi the dog.

4. _____ Today the mother says to Dongzhi, her son, “Go look for a job. We have no money. If we have no money, we have no food.” That day a rich man wanted to move his animals to a new grassland. He asked Dongzhi to help him. Dongzhi said yes. Dongzhi is helping the rich man move his animals to a new grassland. Dongzhi is riding a large white horse. The rich man is riding a large black horse. They are working, they are not lazy. They are very busy.

5. _____ Dongzhi is at home. His mother is surprised. “Why do you have a dog? We cannot eat the dog!” Dongzhi’s mother is angry. She is not happy. Later the dog becomes a beautiful girl. She is a good cook. Dongzhi marries her. They find much money. Their life is very good. They have many children. Dongzhi’s mother is happy. She is now a grandmother. Their home is very beautiful and they have many animals and many fields.

Exercises རུས་བོད

A. Read the story once silently. Are there words you don’t understand? Circle them, and ask your neighbor if they know the answer. If not, the teacher will answer your questions.

B. Discuss the questions and the answers with your neighbor. Next, write answers to the questions:

a. Are the mother and son rich?
b. Does their family have many things?
c. What did the mother say to her son?
d. What job did Dongzhi do?
e. What animal does the rich man have?
f. What does the dog want?
g. When the rich man returns, what does Dongzhi ask for?
C. Dictation: Your teacher will read one paragraph from “The Singing Dog” text. Write exactly what your teacher says. Then compare with your neighbor to see if your heard and spelled the words correctly. 将句子 “The Singing Dog” 中的文字听写下来，然后与你的同桌比较，看看你们是否都听到了并正确地拼写了这些单词。

D. In groups of four, act out this story. One of you is the dog, one is the mother, one is Dongzhi, and one is the rich man. 将这个故事分成四组表演，一组扮演狗，一组扮演母亲，一组扮演Dongzhi，一组扮演富人。

Pronunciation Practice Seven 語音練習七

A. This section will help you with /ed/ endings. There are three different ways to pronounce “ed” at the end of words. They are /d/, /t/, and /id/. The /d/ pronunciation occurs in verbs ending with /bl/, /gl/, /vl/, /zl/, /dhl/, /zhl/, /jl/, /ml/, /nl/, /ll/, and /r/, and all vowels. The /t/ pronunciation occurs in verbs ending with /pl/, /kl/, /fl/, /sl/, /thl/, /shl/, and /chl/. The /id/ pronunciation occurs in verbs ending with /d/ and /t/. Listen to your teacher. Repeat the word pairs: 語音練習七

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/d/</th>
<th>/t/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rob</td>
<td>a. robbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatigue</td>
<td>b. fatigued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save</td>
<td>c. saved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprise</td>
<td>d. surprised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe</td>
<td>e. breathed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wedge</td>
<td>f. wedged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bloom</td>
<td>g. bloomed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smile</td>
<td>h. smiled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spy</td>
<td>i. spied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fan</td>
<td>j. fanned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tap</td>
<td>a. tapped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tape</td>
<td>b. taped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>c. liked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lick</td>
<td>d. licked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stuff</td>
<td>e. stuffed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>f. laughed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bunch</td>
<td>h. bunched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>i. watched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>froth</td>
<td>j. frothed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
/id/

1. seat a. seated
2. seed b. seeded
3. rate c. rated
4. raid d. raided
5. pat e. patted
6. pad f. padded
7. coat g. coated
8. code h. coded
9. knot i. knotted
10. nod j. nodded

B. Listen to your teacher. You will hear the words listed below. As you listen to each word, decide how its past tense ending is pronounced— as /d/, /t/, or /id/. Check the ending that you hear.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>/d/</th>
<th>/t/</th>
<th>/id/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>weighed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waited</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boated</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sighed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tipped</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boxed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leased</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aced</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lived</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answer these questions before you read this story. Discuss your answers with someone sitting near you. Next, write answers to the questions.

a. Have you ever been surprised?

b. What made you surprised?

c. Have you ever had a secret before?

d. Do you like to hear secrets?

Now read this story out loud with your neighbor:

Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo are old. They have no children. They are sad, they are not happy. Dongzhi is angry at Lhamoyicuo because they have no children. Lhamoyicuo is angry at Dongzhi because they have no children.

Today Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo go to Kumbum. They pray for a child. One year later Lhamoyicuo’s thumb becomes very big. Dongzhi takes his long Tibetan knife. The Tibetan knife is sharp. It is not blunt. He cuts Lhamoyicuo’s thumb. A frog jumps out. It is not a child. It is a frog. Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo are surprised. They want a child. They do not want a frog. The frog says, “Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi, you are my mother and father. I am your son.” Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo are surprised. The frog can speak Tibetan!

The frog is now sixteen. The frog wants to marry a beautiful girl. Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo say, “You are a frog. You are a good frog. But no girl wants to marry a frog.” The frog son says, “I will marry a beautiful girl.”

The frog is going to a rich man’s home. He says very loudly, “I want to marry your oldest daughter.” The rich man laughs. “You are a frog. You are not a man. You cannot marry my beautiful daughter.” The frog says, “If you do not give me your daughter I will hop.” The rich man says, “You may hop. I will not give you my beautiful daughter.” The frog is hopping. The earth is shaking. All the people are afraid. The rich man says, “You may marry my daughter. Please stop hopping.” The frog stops hopping.

The rich man’s beautiful daughter is angry. She does not want to marry a frog. She wants to marry a man. She tries to kill the frog. The frog is angry, too. He says, “You are not a good woman. I do not want to marry you.” The frog goes to the rich man’s home. The frog says, “Give me your second daughter.” The rich man is angry. He says, “I gave you my oldest daughter. You do not want to marry her. Now, you want to marry my second daughter. You are a bad frog.” The frog says, “If you do not give me your second daughter, I will weep.” The rich man says, “You may weep. I don’t care. You may not marry my beautiful second daughter.” The frog weeps. There is much water. All the people are very afraid. The rich man says, “You may marry my beautiful daughter. Please stop weeping.” The second daughter loves the frog. They marry. Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi are very happy.

One night the frog takes off his frog clothes. He is a handsome young Tibetan man! The second daughter is very surprised! She is very happy!

One day there is a horserace. The frog’s wife wants to go. The frog says, “You may go to the horserace. I will stay at home. I will not go to the horserace.” The frog’s wife goes to the horserace. A young handsome Tibetan man wins the horserace. His horse runs very fast. His horse is a beautiful white horse. The frog’s wife does not know who the rider is. She thinks he looks like her husband. She goes home. She says, “Today, there was a horserace. The winner was a handsome young Tibetan man. I do not know him. But he looks like you.” The frog said nothing.

The next day the wife says, “I am going to the horserace.” The frog says, “I will stay home. I will
The frog’s wife does not go to the horserace. She is looking through a window. The frog is taking off his frog clothes. He is a handsome young Tibetan man. He rides his horse. He leaves. The wife is not happy. She burns the frog’s clothes.

The handsome young Tibetan man comes home. He is not happy. His frog clothes are burned. He is ill. He says, “I must have my frog clothes. If I do not have frog clothes, I will die.” The frog’s wife is off his frog clothes. He is a handsome young Tibetan man. He rides his horse. He leaves. The wife is not go to the horserace.”
D. Paraphrasing: Paraphrasing means re-telling or re-writing information you have read. When you paraphrase, you should 1) capture the same meaning as what you read and 2) communicate it in different words. Paraphrase this story in writing. 

Exercise: Re-tell this story to your neighbor using your own words. 

B. Put the following sentences in the correct order. For the event that happened first, write a “1.” For the second event write a “2.” 

___ The frog dies because he has no frog clothes. 
___ The frog hopes to marry the rich man’s oldest daughter. 
___ The frog marries the rich man’s second daughter. 
___ The frog takes off his frog clothes and is a handsome Tibetan young man!

C. Drawing: Draw a picture of a scene from the story. Then explain the meaning of your picture to your neighbor. 

D. Paraphrasing: Paraphrasing means re-telling or re-writing information you have read. When you paraphrase, you should 1) capture the same meaning as what you read and 2) communicate it in different words. Paraphrase this story in writing.

The frog takes off his frog clothes and is a handsome Tibetan young man!
(50) Making Tea pezhug

Read this text: གཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག

Cairangzhoma: Can you make some good milk tea, Dongzhi?
Dongzhi: Yes, of course I can, Cairangzhoma. Is there any water in this kettle? Where is the brick of tea?
Cairangzhoma: Yes, there is water in the kettle. The brick of tea is on the table, dear, it is behind the teapot. Can you see it?
Dongzhi: I can see the large teapot, but I can’t see the tea. Cairangzhoma: There are some in the cupboard and there are some on the table. Can you find them?
Dongzhi: Yes, here they are. These teacups are very beautiful. They have dragons on them. Who gave us these teacups?
Cairangzhoma: My mother gave us these teacups. When we married, my mother gave them to us. Hurry up, Dongzhi, the kettle is boiling!

Key Items གཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག

A. Drinking tea is popular in Britain. There, the usual tea time is in the afternoon, about 2 p.m. British people also eat a small snack with their tea, such as cakes or small sandwiches. In America it is popular to drink coffee. Americans like to take coffee breaks. གཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག

B. When people get married in the West, it is customary for wedding guests to give the bride and groom wedding presents. Domestic items like teapots, blankets, and dishes are popular presents. Also, money is given as a gift. གཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག་ཤིག

•125•
C. How do you make milk tea? Look at the following two lists. Then, with another student, act out how to make milk tea.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Things</th>
<th>Actions</th>
<th>Things</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. milk</td>
<td>1. pour</td>
<td>a. milk</td>
<td>1. pour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. tea</td>
<td>2. stir</td>
<td>b. tea</td>
<td>2. stir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. water</td>
<td>3. put in</td>
<td>c. water</td>
<td>3. put in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. cooker</td>
<td>4. put on</td>
<td>d. cooker</td>
<td>4. put on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. pot</td>
<td>5. turn on</td>
<td>e. pot</td>
<td>5. turn on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. match</td>
<td>6. turn off</td>
<td>f. match</td>
<td>6. turn off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. salt</td>
<td>7. add</td>
<td>g. salt</td>
<td>7. add</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. thermos</td>
<td>8. sprinkle</td>
<td>h. thermos</td>
<td>8. sprinkle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. lid (cover)</td>
<td>9. boil</td>
<td>i. lid (cover)</td>
<td>9. boil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. cup</td>
<td>10. wait</td>
<td>j. cup</td>
<td>10. wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11. drink</td>
<td></td>
<td>11. drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12. pick up</td>
<td></td>
<td>12. pick up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. A demonstration is showing, or demonstrating, how to do or make something. You show a step-by-step process and tell what you are doing. For example, making milk tea can be a demonstration. Choose a topic from the list below, or do a demonstration with an original idea. Be prepared to present it to the class. The important thing to remember when doing a demonstration is 1) to be sure everyone can see clearly what you’re doing, 2) to speak clearly and loudly, and 3) don’t be nervous.

- how to play a game
- how to make a dish of food
- how to make a craft
- how to knit
- how to take a good photo
- how to put ink into a pen
- how to put on a pair of glasses
- how to tie a pair of shoes
- how to pour water from a thermos into a glass
- how to make tsamba
- how to cook mutton
- how to make blood sausage
(51) **Are there....?**

A. Read these sentences. When you finish, write two sentences for each question using such words as "how many," "what," and "where.”

a. Are there any loaves of bread on the table? Yes, there are. There are two loaves of bread on the table.
b. Is there any bread on the table? Yes, there is. There are two loaves of bread on the table.
c. Are there any hammers behind that box? Yes, there are. There are two hammers behind that box.
d. Is there milk in front of the door? Yes, there is. There is milk in front of the door. There are two bottles of milk in front of the door.
e. Are there any bottles of milk in front of the door? Yes, there are. There are two bottles of milk in front of the door.
f. Is there any milk in our home? Yes, there is. There is much good milk in our home. The milk is on the table. The milk is in a large pot.
g. Is there any soap on the sideboard? Yes, there is. There is soap on the sideboard. There are three bars of soap on the sideboard. The soap smells nice.
h. Are there any newspapers behind that beautiful small blue vase? Yes, there are. There are three newspapers behind that vase. One is a Tibetan newspaper. One is an English newspaper. And one is a Chinese newspaper.
i. Is there any water in those glasses? Yes, there is. There is water in those two glasses. The two glasses are on the table.
j. Is there any tea in those nice dragon teacups? Yes, there is. There is tea in these two cups.
k. Is there any chocolate behind that book? Yes, there is. There are two bars of chocolate behind that book.
l. Are there any chocolate bars behind that book? Yes, there are two.

B. Practice this conversation with your neighbor:

**Dongzhi:** Can you please come here a minute, Dawazhiba?

**Dawazhiba:** Yes, sir. I can.

**Dongzhi:** Where’s Miss Cairangzhoma?

**Dawazhiba:** She’s next door. She’s in her office, Mr. Dongzhi. She is typing. She is very busy.

**Dongzhi:** Can she type this short letter for me? Please ask her.

**Dawazhiba:** Yes, Mr. Dongzhi.--Can you type this letter for the boss please, Miss Cairangzhoma?

**Cairangzhoma:** Yes, of course I can.

**Dawazhiba:** Here you are.

**Cairangzhoma:** Thank you, Dawazhiba.--Dawazhiba!

**Dawazhiba:** Yes? What’s the matter?

**Cairangzhoma:** I can’t type this letter. I can’t read it! Mr. Dongzhi’s handwriting is terrible!
C. Write answers to the following questions: ནག་མེད་བསུམ་བཟོས་ལེན་བཟོས།

a. Can you type?

b. Is your handwriting good or terrible?

c. Is your teacher’s handwriting good or terrible?

D. Read this text “At the Office: Losing Your Job” with your partner: ལོག་ཁབ་དག་དུ་ལེན་བཟོས།

A: What is it? Am I too young?
B: Well, not exactly.
A: It’s my age, isn’t it?
B: No, it’s not your age.
A: What is it then?
B: Well, you were the last hired...
A: And?
B: Mr. Dorji’s son...
A: Say no more. Mr. Dorji prefers his son over me.
B: Well, it’s his company.
A: And my job!
B: There is nothing you can do about it.
A: Except become the boss’ son-in-law!
B: One small thing.
A: He doesn’t have a daughter.
For each question, answer “yes,” “no,” or “maybe.”

1. What is the relationship between the speakers?
   ___ acquaintances
   ___ strangers
   ___ good friends
   ___ family
   ___ employer and employee
   ___ colleagues

2. The conversation takes place:
   ___ in a restaurant
   ___ in a home
   ___ in an office
   ___ on an airplane
   ___ on the phone

3. The first speaker is worried about:
   ___ his marriage
   ___ his friendship
   ___ his school grades
   ___ his job
   ___ his vacation

4. The second speaker is:
   ___ sympathetic
   ___ envious
   ___ pleased
   ___ disappointed
   ___ humorous
   ___ honest

5. Finish the line: The last hired is ....
   ___ the last paid
   ___ the last promoted
   ___ the first fired
   ___ the first on top
   ___ the last

6. “Say no more” means
   ___ I can’t stand your voice
   ___ Please be quiet
   ___ I understand
   ___ You talk too much
   ___ Say the word “no more”
(52) Can and Can’t (I) 能和不能

1 Dongzhi: I can put my hat on but I can’t put my Tibetan robe on.

a. Can he put his hat on? Yes, he can. He can put his hat on.
b. Can he put his Tibetan robe on? No, he can’t. He can’t put it on.

2 Dongzhi: I can see that airplane but I can’t see a bird.

a. Can Dongzhi see an airplane? Yes, he can see it. He can see the airplane. Dongzhi can see the airplane.
b. Can Dongzhi see the bird? No, Dongzhi can’t see a bird.

3 Dongzhi: I can paint that / this / the / a bookcase, but I can’t paint that / this / the / a room.

a. Can he paint that / this / the / a bookcase? Yes, he can.
b. Can he paint the / this / that / a room? No, he can’t paint it.

4 Dongzhi: I can lift that light chair but I can’t lift this heavy table.

Exercises 能和不能

A. Discuss the following questions with your neighbor and write answers: 能和不能

a. Can he lift the table?
b. Can he lift the chair?
c. What can you lift?
d. What is too heavy for you to lift?

B. What things can you do? (I can speak Tibetan. I can run quickly.) Write six sentences. 能和不能

“I can speak Tibetan.” “I can run fast.”

C. What things can you not do? (I can’t fly. I can’t speak Spanish.) Write six sentences. 能和不能

“I can’t fly.” “I can’t speak Spanish.”
D. Cairangzhoma: I can read this English book but I can’t read this magazine.

Write answers to the following questions: 

a. Can she read the English book?
b. Can Cairangzhoma read the magazine?
c. What do you like to read?
d. Ask three of your classmates what they like to read. Write their answers.

E. Cairangzhoma: I can jump off this box but I can’t jump off that wall.

Write answers to the following questions: 

a. Can Cairangzhoma jump off the box?
b. Can Cairangzhoma jump off the wall?
c. What is too high to jump off of?

Song Number Seven 

Baa, baa black sheep
Have you any wool?
Yes sir, yes sir,
Three backs full

One for my master
One for my dame
One for the little boy
Who lives down the lane
A. Look at these examples: 

*He is taking his book.--He can take his book.  
*She is putting on her coat.--She can put on her coat.

Now change the following sentences in the same way:  

a. They are herding these sheep.  

b. She is making bread.  

c. You are running across the field.  

d. You are riding a large white horse.  

e. We are swimming across the river now.  

f. We are making milk tea.  

g. He is reading that English book.  

h. I am jumping off this camel.  

i. They are cooking some mutton soup.  

j. Those women are washing the dishes.  

k. Dongzhi and Cairangzhoma are making a new adobe home.  

l. Cairangzhoma is giving Dawazhiba some milk.  

m. Cairangzhoma is cooking dinner.  

n. Those Tibetan students are studying math.  

o. You are studying English at Southwest Nationalities Institute.  

p. We are eating barley flour, cheese, and sugar now.  

q. He is eating some good hot mutton soup.  

B. Here are some other modal verbs besides can: should, would, must and may. Modal verbs are used when asking for something to add politeness to the request.  

“Can”

“should”

“would,”

“must,”

“may”

Modal verbs, in order of strength:  

Command  

a. must / have to  

b. would / will  

c. could / can  

d. should  

e. might / may  

Weak suggestion
Exercises

A. Listen to your teacher read the following sentences. Circle the word they say. Is it “can” or “can’t”?

a. The secretary can / can’t help you.
b. My mother can / can’t speak English.
c. My friend can / can’t meet you at the airport.
d. Mr. Smith can / can’t answer your question.
e. We can / can’t come to the meeting.
f. Can / Can’t you come?
g. We can / can’t visit you tomorrow evening.
h. You can / can’t go out to dinner.
i. I can / can’t cook.
j. Our son can / can’t count to ten.

B. Ask polite questions in the following situations. Use modal verbs. For example: *Your plane leaves at 6 p.m. tomorrow. You want your friend to take you to the airport. Could / Would you take me to the airport tomorrow night?*

“Your plane leaves at 6 p.m. tomorrow. You want your friend to take you to the airport.”

a. You are sitting at a friend’s house. A bowl of fruit is sitting on the table. You want an apple.
b. You are hot. The window is closed.
c. You are trying to study, but your roommates are talking loudly.
d. You call your friend. Someone else answers and tells you your friend is out. You want to leave a message.
e. You want a pen, but you can’t reach it. Your friend can. You ask your friend to get it for you.
f. You are at a restaurant. You want more hot water.
g. You call your boss’s house. His name is Mr. Smith. You want to talk to him. His wife answers the phone.
h. You are giving a party. Your guests just arrived. You want to get them something to drink.
i. You are the teacher. You want a student to shut the door.
j. You want to know what time it is. You ask a stranger for the time.
k. You are in the middle of a big city. You are lost. You ask a stranger for directions.
(54) Review лушите!

1: Choose the correct word to complete the sentence. Only one word for each question is correct.

a. She / Her / home is Jiegu. (Her home is Jiegu.)
b. She lives / home / in Jiegu.
c. She / Her father is a herdsman.
d. She / Her has five children.
e. She / Her studies at Central Nationalities University?
f. He / His home is Gansu.
g. He / She / His / They / Ours home is Ngawa.
h. He / Boy / Her / Man / Him / His is not lazy.
i. He / Her / They / We / My / Him has two brothers.
j. He / Him / Her / We is not lazy.
k. They / She / He / Her / Him / Us have two children.
l. He has / have two goats.
m. She has / have no children.

2: Correct these sentences:

a. There are bread on the table.
b. There are any hammers behind that box.
c. There are milk in front of the door.
d. There are soap on the sideboard.
e. There are newspaper behind that vase.
f. There are water in those glasses.
g. There are tea in those tea cups.

h. There have teacups in front of that kettle.
i. There are chocolate behind that book.
j. There are teapot in the cupboard.
k. There have car in front of the building.
m. There is coffee on the table.
n. There is cars in front of that building.

3: Correct these sentences:

a. Is there any passport on that table?
a. _________________________
b. Is there any milks in that bottle?
b. _________________________
c. Is there any spoons on that plates?
c. _________________________
d. Is there a ties on that chairs?
d. _________________________
e. Is there any loaf of bread on that table?
e. _________________________

f. Is there a hammers on that tables?
f. __________________________
g. Is there any teas on that tables?
g. __________________________
h. Is there any vases on that television?
h. __________________________
i. Is there a suit on that wardrobe?
i. __________________________
j. Is there have tobaccos on that tables?
j. __________________________
**Homonyms**

Homonyms are words that are pronounced the same, but spelled differently. Examples of this are “red” and “read,” “see” and “sea,” “buy” and “bye.” In the following exercise, there are three homonyms. “They’re” is a contraction for “they are.” “Their” is the possessive form of “they.” “There” is used in all other cases.

*Homonym Happiness: Fill in the blanks with two or three words that have the same sound but different spellings and different meanings. The homonyms are listed below.

- **They’re** / Their / There
- Red / Read
- Sea / See
- Buy / Bye
- Rose / Road
- Blew / Blue
- Sea / See
- Home / House
- English / English

Choose the correct answer.

- a. They’re / Their / There are two students in this room.
- b. They’re / Their / There are two students in this room.
- c. They’re / Their / There are two students in this room.
- d. They’re / Their / There are two students in this room.
- e. They’re / Their / There is a box on the table.
- f. They’re / Their / There is a box on the table.
- g. They’re / Their / There are a box on the table.
- h. They’re / Their / There are a box on the table.
- i. They’re / Their / There are a box on the table.
- j. They’re / Their / There are a box on the table.

1. Our team ______ ______ game and lost three games.
2. They agreed ___ play ____ more games next week, ____.
3. The four of us were so hungry that we ___ _______ dishes.
4. Each player _________ the ball __________ the hoop at least once.
5. As we approached the coast we could _____ the ______.
6. Anna had ____ many things to ____ on her new machine that she had no time to ____ any seeds in the garden.
7. At the airport, he said, “Come this ____ so they can __________ your luggage.”
8. We _____ on horseback until we came to the _____ that led to town.
9. The wind _____ the rain clouds away, leaving a clear ______ sky.
10. The man in the _____ coat _____ the book in a loud voice.

**Pronunciation Practice Eight**

Here are some easily confused sounds. One is the difference between / bl / and / pl /. The other is the / br / and / pr / sounds. Repeat the following pairs of words:

- /red/ and /read/
- /sea/ and /see/
- /buy/ and /bye/
- /rose/ and /road/
- /blew/ and /blue/
- /sea/ and /see/
- /home/ and /house/
- /English/ and /English/

---

*135*
Song Number Eight សុនសាលា “Oh Susanna” is a popular and well-loved song in America. It was written in 1845 and was an instant success. Two years later, it became the unofficial “theme song” for the California Gold Rush.

“Oh Susanna” សុនសាលា “Oh Susanna” ជារឿងសុំខ្មែរដ៏ចំណាយប្រសើរបំផុតប្រចាំអារាណើម។ ក្រោយពីបីឆ្នាំ វាគួរមកជាអាចប្តូរទូទៅជាអារះសាលាដូចគ្នា សម្រាប់ការចាប់ផ្តើមស្រលាញ់កំពូលកំពូក។

OH SUSANNA

1
I come from Alabama¹ with my banjo² on my knee, I’m going to Louisiana,³ Susanna for to see.

Chorus
Oh Susanna, oh don’t you cry for me, for I come from Alabama with my banjo on my knee.

2
It rained all night, the day I left, the weather was so dry. The sun so hot I froze⁴ to death, Susanna don’t you cry.

Chorus

3
I had a dream the other night when everything was still. I thought I saw Susanna a coming down the hill.

Chorus

4
A buckwheat cake⁵ was in her mouth, a tear was in her eye. I said, “I come from Dixieland,⁶ Susanna don’t you cry.”

Chorus

¹a southern state in America
²a four-stringed instrument, like a guitar
³a southern state in America
⁴past tense of the verb freeze
⁵a pancake made of buckwheat flour
⁶“Dixie” is a nickname for the Southern States in America.
Mrs. Cairangzhoma: Do you like milk tea, Mrs. Lhamoyicuo?
Mrs. Lhamoyicuo: Yes, I do.
Mrs. Cairangzhoma: Do you want a bowl?
Mrs. Lhamoyicuo: Yes, please, Mrs. Cairangzhoma.
Mrs. Cairangzhoma: Do you want a large bowl, or a small bowl?
Mrs. Lhamoyicuo: I want a large bowl. I am very thirsty.
Mrs. Cairangzhoma: Do you want any cheese?
Mrs. Lhamoyicuo: Yes, please. I like cheese.
Mrs. Cairangzhoma: Do you want any butter?
Mrs. Lhamoyicuo: Yes, please. I like butter, too.
Mrs. Cairangzhoma: Do you want any salt?
Mrs. Lhamoyicuo: No, thank you. I don’t like salt in my milk tea. I like milk tea with no salt.
Mrs. Cairangzhoma: Do you like barley flour with butter, sugar, and cheese?
Mrs. Lhamoyicuo: Yes, I do.
Mrs. Cairangzhoma: Do you want some?
Mrs. Lhamoyicuo: Yes, please.
“Like” and “want” are related, but not the same. You may “like” something but not “want” it. For example, I like beef, but if I have just eaten lunch, I don’t want any beef. “Like” means “appreciate.” “Want” means “desire” or “yearn.” When talking about people, generally use “like.” If I talk about my friend, I should say, “I like him.” I shouldn’t say, “I want him.” “Want” also means that you desire to have something. “Do you want some salt?” If you answer “yes” then I will give you some salt. If “Like”, “want” “friend,” I should say, “I like him.” I shouldn’t say, “I want him.” “Want” means “desire” or “yearn.” When talking about people, generally use “like.” If I talk about my friend, I should say, “I like him.” I shouldn’t say, “I want him.” “Want” also means that you desire to have something. “Do you want some salt?” If you answer “yes” then I will give you some salt.

**Exercise**

Write answers to these questions: 

a. What foods do you like?
b. What foods do you not like?
c. Who likes milk tea?
d. Who doesn’t like salt in her milk tea?
e. Do you like salt in milk tea?
f. What does Mrs. Lhamoyicuo want? (bowl of milk tea, cheese, butter, and barley flour with sugar and cheese)

---

Dongzhi: Do you like my new Tibetan robe?

Dawazhiba: Yes, I do. It is very smart. Who made it?

Dongzhi: My mother made it. I like it, too.

Dawazhiba: Yes, it is very beautiful. Do you like my new Tibetan hat?

Dongzhi: Yes, I do. It is very beautiful. Did your mother make it?

Dawazhiba: No, my mother did not make this hat, my wife made this hat.

---

**Key Item**

“Like” and “want” are related, but not the same. You may “like” something but not “want” it. For example, I like beef, but if I have just eaten lunch, I don’t want any beef. “Like” means “appreciate.” “Want” means “desire” or “yearn.” When talking about people, generally use “like.” If I talk about my friend, I should say, “I like him.” I shouldn’t say, “I want him.” “Want” also means that you desire to have something. “Do you want some salt?” If you answer “yes” then I will give you some salt. If “Like”, “want” “friend,” I should say, “I like him.” I shouldn’t say, “I want him.” “Want” means “desire” or “yearn.” When talking about people, generally use “like.” If I talk about my friend, I should say, “I like him.” I shouldn’t say, “I want him.” “Want” also means that you desire to have something. “Do you want some salt?” If you answer “yes” then I will give you some salt.
Exercises

A. Tell another student about Dongzhi’s clothes. Describe his robe and hat. Now, tell another student about the clothes you are wearing. Use these words: trousers (pants), shirt, coat, sweater, and shoes.

B. Write answers to these questions:

a. Who has a new robe?
b. Who are talking?
c. What are Dongzhi and Dawazhiba talking about?
d. Who made Dawazhiba’s hat?
e. Who made Dawazhiba’s robe?
f. What did Dawazhiba’s mother do?
g. What did Dawazhiba’s wife do?

3

a. Dongzhi: Do you like riding horses, Dawazhiba?
   Dawazhiba: Yes, I do.
   Dongzhi: Do you want to ride horses?
   Dawazhiba: Yes, I do.
   Dongzhi: Do you want to ride this black horse?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t. I want to ride that white horse. That white horse is very large. It can run very fast. This black horse is very old and very slow.

b. Dongzhi: Do you want to study English now?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t. Now, I want to sleep.

c. Dongzhi: Do you want to swim, now?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t. Now, I want to study English.

d. Dongzhi: Do you like apples?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t like apples. I like bananas.

e. Dongzhi: Do you like butter?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t like butter. I like cheese.

f. Dongzhi: Do you like coffee?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t like coffee. I like milk tea with salt and cheese.

g. Dongzhi: Do you like beer?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t like beer. I like wine.

h. Dongzhi: Do you like ice cream?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t like ice cream. It is too cold.

i. Dongzhi: Do you like peaches?
   Dawazhiba: No, I don’t like peaches, I like pears.

j. Dongzhi: Dawazhiba, do you like grapes?
   Dawazhiba: No, I do not like grapes, I like oranges. I do not want any grapes, I want some oranges.
Exercise ផ្វេះអញ្ជើញ

Use “like” and “want” and the following words. Make questions and then ask another student. Next, with another student, think of some things you like, but you don’t want. И “Like” и “want” и “желать” и “мечтать” и “характеристику” и “свойства” и “типографию” и “каталого” и “название”. Использовать “like” и “want” и “желать” и “мечтать” и “характеристику” и “свойства” и “типографию” и “каталого” и “название”. Использовать “like” и “want” и “желать” и “мечтать” и “характеристику” и “свойства” и “типографию” и “каталого” и “название”.

riding horses
study English
swim
apples
butter
coffee
beer
wine

4
Cairangzhoma: I want some envelopes please.
Stationer: Do you want the red ones or the blue ones?
Cairangzhoma: I want the red ones.
Stationer: Do you want the large size or the small size?
Cairangzhoma: I want the small size please. Do you have any writing-paper?
Stationer: Yes, we have some writing-paper. I haven’t any large pads. I only have small ones. Do you want a pad?
Cairangzhoma: Yes, please. Do you have blue pads?
Stationer: No, we don’t have any blue pads. We only have yellow pads.
Cairangzhoma: I want two yellow pads. And I want some blue ink and some glue.
Stationer: A bottle of blue ink and a bottle of glue.
Cairangzhoma: And I want a small box of chalk, too.
Stationer: I only have large boxes. Do you want one?
Cairangzhoma: No, thank you.
Stationer: Is that all?
Cairangzhoma: That’s all, thank you very much.
Stationer: What else do you want?
Cairangzhoma: I want my change.

Exercises ផ្វេះអញ្ជើញ

A. Act out this dialogue with another student. One student is the customer and one student is the stationer. Исполнить диалог с другим студентом. Один студент является клиентом, а другой студент является продавцом.

B. Write answers to the following questions: Исполнить диалог с другим студентом. Один студент является клиентом, а другой студент является продавцом.

a. Who wants some envelopes?
b. Where is Cairangzhoma?
c. What color envelopes does Cairangzhoma want?
d. Does the stationer want some envelopes?
e. Does Cairangzhoma want large or small envelopes?
f. Does the stationer have any writing-paper?
g. Who doesn’t have large pads?
h. Who wants a pad?
i. Does the stationer have yellow pads?
j. Who doesn’t have blue pads?
k. How many yellow pads does Cairangzhoma want?
l. Does Cairangzhoma want a large box of chalk?
m. Who only has large boxes of chalk?

n. Who doesn’t want a large box of chalk?
o. Who wants her change?
p. What color is the ink?
q. Who only has yellow pads?

Use “like” or “likes” in the sentences that follow. || “Like” 
I / you / they / we / like
he / she / likes
I / you / they / we don’t like
he / she / doesn’t like

a. We (like) butter but we don’t (like) cheese.
b. He ___ cheese but he doesn’t ___ butter.
c. They ___ milk but he doesn’t ___ milk.
d. She ___ oranges but she doesn’t ___ apples.

Use “want” and “wants” in the sentences that follow. These two words are used in the same way as “like” and “likes.” || “Want” 
I / you / they / we / want
he / she / wants
I / you / they / we don’t want
he / she / doesn’t want

a. I like butter and I ___ some butter.
b. He likes tea and he ___ some tea.
c. They ___ some tea, too.
d. We ___ some salt in our tea.
e. We don’t ___ sugar in our tea.
f. They don’t ___ sugar, they ___ salt.
g. He doesn’t ___ salt, he ___ sugar.

Pronunciation Practice Nine

A. The / gl / and / kl / sounds are difficult to pronounce. Practice repeating after your teacher. || / gl / / kl / 

/gl/ / kl/
a. glean 1. clean
b. glaze 2. clays
c. glad 3. clad
d. glamour 4. clamor
e. glue 5. clue
f. glued 6. clued
g. glows 7. clothes
h. glide 8. Clyde (man’s name)
i. angle 9. ankle
j. wrangle 10. rankle

B. Two other difficult sounds are / gr / and / kr /. Practice these words, carefully repeating: || / gr / / kr / 

/gr/ / kr/
a. graze 1. craze
b. gram 2. cram
c. grows 3. crows
d. grown 4. crone
e. grime 5. crime
f. anger 6. anchor
(57) **Look at... (…)**

Mrs. Davis / well
Look at Mrs. Davis. She’s very well.

Now do the following in the same way.  

- a. man / fat Look at that...
- b. woman / thin
- c. policeman / tall
- d. policewoman / short
- e. mechanic / dirty
- f. nurse / clean
- g. Mr. Dorji / hot
- h. Mrs. Lhamtso / cold
- i. milkman / old

**Debate: ཞེས་རབ།**

Are there too many people in the world? དཔལ་གཉིས་གཞི་མདོ་ནས་བཅོས་པར་འེལ་

Fact: During this debate, about 7,000 children will be born in the world. About 3,000 people will die. This gap will add 65 million people to the world population in the next year. Here are some words that are important for having this debate: ཤེག་དཔལ་གཉིས་ཙུམ་ཏུ་སྟེ། གཞི་ནས་བཅོས་པར་འེལ། རྩ་མ་དེར་འཁོར་སྐབས་བཟས་པའི་གཞི་

population control རྣམ་གཉིས་པའི་ཐོག་

birth rate སྟེང་ལས་

birth control རྡུང་ལས་

Discuss these questions: ཤེག་དཔལ་གཉིས་ཙུམ་ཏུ་སྟེ། གཞི་ནས་བཅོས་པར་འེལ།

1. Do you think population control is necessary?
2. Would the world benefit, or suffer, with more people?
This is my ball. It is a red ball. Can you see the big red ball?
I have my ball. I have my big ball. I have my red ball. Can you see me and my red ball?
Here is Dorjisu. Dorjisu is a girl. She has a yellow dress. Can you see Dorjisu and her yellow dress?
I am playing with Dorjisu. We are playing with the big red ball. Dorjisu says, “Throw the ball. Throw the ball to me.”
I am throwing the ball. I am throwing the ball to Dorjisu. Run, Dorjisu, run! Run and catch the ball. Dorjisu is running. She is running after the ball. Where is the ball? She cannot see the big red ball. Can you see the ball? The ball is rolling down the hill. Where is Dorjisu? Dorjisu is not here.
Where is the ball? Dorjisu is running. I am running with Dorjisu. We are looking for the ball. There is a big tree on the hill. The ball is rolling near the tree. It is near the tree on the hill. Look, Dorjisu, look! Look for the ball. Look down the hill. Look near the tree. Can you find the ball?
Dorjisu is walking near the tree. She is looking for the ball. There is the ball! It is under the big tree. Dorjisu is running to the big tree. She can see the big red ball. “Here is the ball, under the tree! Here is the big red ball!”
Dorjisu and I are playing with the ball. We are throwing the ball and catching it. We are playing near the big tree on the hill.
Exercises

A. Act out this story with one of your classmates. First, read this short passage that appeared in a newspaper:  "A man said he took a photograph (picture) of a UFO. He said he took the picture two nights ago near his home in Los Angeles, California. Some people said he lied (said something that was false). Some airport officials looked at the picture. They said that it was a fake (not true). Bob Green took the picture. He is 45-years-old. He said that he saw a large orange light in the sky. He watched it for about 30 seconds. Then he asked his son to go into the house and get his camera..."

B. Write answers to the following questions:

1. What color is the ball?
2. What is red?
3. Is the ball blue?
4. Is the ball small?
5. What is the girl’s name?
6. What color is Dorjsu’s dress?
7. Is the tree big or small?
8. Where is the tree?
9. What is under the big tree?
10. Who are playing with the ball?
11. Who are throwing and catching the ball?
12. Who are running?

C. Do you believe in UFOs? What is a UFO? It stands for Unidentified Flying Object, usually believed to come from outer space. First, read this short passage that appeared in a newspaper:  "A man said he took a photograph (picture) of a UFO. He said he took the picture two nights ago near his home in Los Angeles, California. Some people said he lied (said something that was false). Some airport officials looked at the picture. They said that it was a fake (not true). Bob Green took the picture. He is 45-years-old. He said that he saw a large orange light in the sky. He watched it for about 30 seconds. Then he asked his son to go into the house and get his camera..."

Two people read this article. Now they are discussing it:

Don: Perhaps you will say that there are little green men watching us from the sky.
Gloria: Maybe there are. Who knows? But I’m not saying that. All I’m saying is that many people say they’ve seen UFOs.
Don: Military aircraft, or clouds, or balloons. People imagine things so easily.
Gloria: UFOs are a reality (true).
Don: Then why aren’t there more photographs and evidence?
Gloria: There are many pictures.
Don: Not nearly enough. And it’s so easy to fake photos taken of things in the sky. And if they do exist, why don’t they land? Why don’t the little green men tell us who they are?
Gloria: Maybe they are not ready to do that yet.
Don: \( \text{Don: } \) Has anyone seen a flying saucer? Have they seen one? Do you believe in little green men?

Gloria: \( \text{Gloria: } \) I've seen one. I believe in little green men.

Don: \( \text{Don: } \) Have many people seen flying saucers? What about photos?

Gloria: \( \text{Gloria: } \) Many people have seen them. Photos are not good evidence.

Don: \( \text{Don: } \) Why aren't they good evidence?

Gloria: \( \text{Gloria: } \) They're not good because they're not real.

Comprehension Questions:
1. What are Don and Gloria talking about?
2. Does Don believe in little green men?
3. Does Gloria believe in this?
4. According to Gloria, have many people seen flying saucers?
5. Who says UFOs are a reality?
6. Why aren’t photos good evidence, according to Don?

Take a Stand:
1. Which person do you agree with? Why?
2. If a friend said that they saw a UFO, would you believe them? What questions would you ask?
3. People have claimed to see UFOs for thousands of years, so they must exist. Do you agree?
4. Imagine a world that is different than earth. Write several sentences about it. Then describe it to your partner.

Dictation:
Your teacher will read a passage from the above story. Write the words you hear.
The Skipping-Rope

Listen to your teacher read this story. Fill in the blanks with the missing words. There is a word list at the end of the passage.

My name is Zhaxi. _______ is giving me a jersey. It is a new _______. This is my new red jersey.

This is Cairangzhoma. Mother is _______ her a skipping-rope. Cairangzhoma is _______. This is her skipping rope.

Cairangzhoma and I are going to _______. Here we are. She has her new skipping-rope. I _______ my new jersey.

We are ___ school. Cairangzhoma is skipping on the _______. The grass is ____. The skipping-rope is wet. Cairangzhoma and Lhamoyicuo are skipping. They are jumping over the _______. Cairangzhoma and Lhamoyicuo are saying, “One, two, _______, jump; four, five, six, ______.”

Dorjicairang and I are playing. We are playing ___________. Can you see Dorjicairang? Can you see the football? I am ___________ the ball. I am kicking it to Dorjicairang. Dorjicairang is ___________ the ball. He is kicking it to me. I am running into the grass. I am running after the ball. I am falling down in the grass. I am falling on the wet ball.

Dorjicairang says to me, “There is some ____ on your jersey.” I can see the mud. My new jersey is wet with mud.

Cairangzhoma says to me, “Give me your jersey. I can _______ it for you. I can wash the mud off your jersey.”

Cairangzhoma says to me, “_____ my skipping rope to that tree.” We tie the rope to the big _______. We throw my jersey over the rope. Now my jersey is _______. We are going home. Cairangzhoma has her skipping rope in her _______. I have my new red jersey.

Word List: 有的

at catching dry football have

giving grass hand jersey kicking

mud jump school skipping

three rope tree

wet tie

Exercise

Write answers to these questions. You may work with your neighbor.

a. What did Zhaxi’s mother give Zhaxi?
b. Who gave Zhaxi a new jersey?
c. What color is the jersey?
d. Who are going to school?
e. What did Zhaxi’s mother give Cairangzhoma?
f. Where is Cairangzhoma skipping?
g. What is wet?
h. What are Cairangzhoma and Lhamoyicuo saying?
i. Who is Dorjicairang playing with?
j. Who is Zhaxi playing with?
k. Who is kicking the ball to Dorjicairang?
l. Who is catching the ball?
m. Who falls down?
n. Where does Zhaxi fall?
o. What is the new jersey wet with?
p. What does Cairangzhoma say to Zhaxi?
q. Where do they tie the rope?
r. Where is the jersey thrown?
s. Who go home together?
t. Are Zhaxi and Cairangzhoma brother and sister?
Exercises

A. These sentences are incomplete (not finished). Write the end of each sentence:

a. The funniest thing I ever saw was...
b. If I had 24 hours to live...
c. On Saturdays I usually...
d. I’d like to spend a long vacation in...
e. I have never...
f. Parents should always...
g. My children will...
h. This world would be a better place if...
i. I never worry about...
j. Someday I am going to...
k. I get very angry if...
l. I find it difficult to...
m. I’d like to be more...
n. I am not interested in...
o. Studying is...

Now, the class will be divided in half. Arrange the chairs in your classroom in two circles, one inside the other, facing each other. Each student sits on a chair. There are always two students facing each other. They talk about the answers to the first sentence with each other. Then the students in the outer circle all move one chair to the left and discuss the second sentence with the next person. They continue moving until all sentences have been discussed.

B. Read the questions and answers below carefully. Rank all the answers to each question from 1 to 5. Give number 1 to your first answer (what you like best or agree with most), number 2 to your second answer, and so on. Number 5 should always be your last choice (what you like least or don’t agree with the most).

a. Which would you least like to do tonight?
   _____ go to the movie theater
   _____ listen to a symphony
   _____ play a game with friends
   _____ mend clothes
   _____ go to bed at 8 p.m..
b. What would make you the most uneasy?
   ____ someone praising you in front of others
   ____ being in a large crowd
   ____ meeting a new girlfriend or boyfriend’s parents
   ____ people laughing at you
   ____ seeing someone cry

c. In which way do you learn best?
   ____ by reading things out loud
   ____ by having the radio on while you work
   ____ by repetition
   ____ by discussing things with someone else
   ____ by making lots of notes

d. Which would you most like to improve?
   ____ your looks
   ____ your attitude to work
   ____ your social life
   ____ your interest in current affairs
   ____ your relationship with your family

e. What would you like to have a lot of money for?
   ____ to travel a lot
   ____ to be independent
   ____ to buy things you like
   ____ to spend freely on food and drink
   ____ to help others in need

f. Which would you most like to have?
   ____ one or two very close friends
   ____ a large number of acquaintances
   ____ five or six good friends
   ____ just one friend
   ____ both good friends and many acquaintances

g. Which quality do your friends like most in you?
   ____ your honesty
   ____ your cheerfulness and good humor
   ____ your reliability
   ____ your willingness to listen and to help
   ____ your generosity

Now, explain your choices to your neighbor. Tell them why you ranked them in the order you did. Some of you may be asked to explain your choices to the rest of the class.
(60) Days of the Week

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Days of the Week</th>
<th>Monday (גזרה)</th>
<th>Tuesday (גניבת)</th>
<th>Wednesday (גניבת)</th>
<th>Thursday (גניבת)</th>
<th>Friday (גניבת)</th>
<th>Saturday (גניבת)</th>
<th>Sunday (גניבת)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Exercises

A. Fill in this chart showing what you do on each day of the week.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time of Day</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
<th>Saturday</th>
<th>Sunday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Morning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afternoon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Write answers to the following questions:

a. What day of the week is your favorite? Why?
b. What day is the best for shopping?
c. What day are the streets of cities the most crowded?
d. What days of the weeks do people often not work?

C. Read this poem: 

The Blind Men and the Elephant (John Godfrey Saxe)

It was six men of Indostan (Six men from Indostan)
To learning much inclined, (They liked to study,)
Who went to see the Elephant 
(Though all of them were blind), (The six men were all blind)
That each by observation (Each man wanted to touch the elephant)
Might satisfy his mind. (Each man wanted to be sure he knew what an elephant was)

The first approached the Elephant, (approached = went near)
And happening to fall (the man fell)
Against his broad and sturdy side, (against the elephant’s wide and strong side)
At once began to bawl: (the blind man shouted)
“God bless me! but the Elephant
Is very like a wall!”

The second, feeling of the tusk,
Cried, “Ho! what have we here (“What is this?”)
So very round and smooth and sharp?
To me ’tis mighty clear (it is easy to understand)
This wonder of an Elephant

Is very like a spear!”
The third approached the animal,  
And happening to take  
The squirming trunk within his hands, (trunk = elephant’s long nose)  
Thus boldly up and spoke: (bravely said)  
“I see,” quoth he, “the Elephant (quoth = said)  
Is very like a snake.”

The fourth reached out an eager hand, (eager = want to do something very much)  
And felt about the knee. (knee = the middle part of your leg that bends)  
“What most this wondrous beast is like  
Is mighty plain,” quoth he; (is mighty plain = obvious, easy to see)  
“’Tis clear enough the Elephant  
Is very like a tree!”

The fifth, who chanced to touch the ear, (chanced = happened)  
Said: “Even the blindest man  
Can tell what this resembles most; (resembles = looks like, similar)  
Deny the fact who can, (deny = says it isn’t so, it isn’t true)  
This marvel of an Elephant (marvel = wonder, something very special)  
Is very like a fan!”

The sixth no sooner had begun  
About the beast to grope, (grope = look for something with your hands)  
Than, seizing on the swinging tail (taking the tail that was going back and forth)  
That fell within his scope, (scope = reach)  
“I see,” quoth he, “the Elephant  
“Is very like a rope!”

And so these men of Indostan  
Disputed loud and long, (disputed = argued)  
Each his own opinion (opinion = idea)  
Exceeding stiff and strong, (very strongly believed)  
Though each was partly in the right, (partly in the right = somewhat true)  
And all were in the wrong!

So oft in theological wars, (oft = often, frequently)  
The disputants, I ween, (disputants = those who disagree; ween = think)  
Rail on in utter ignorance (rail on = continue to talk foolishly)  
Of what each other mean,  
And prate about an Elephant (prate = talk foolishly)  
Not one of them has seen!
Should old acquaintance be forgot, for old lang syne?
Should old acquaintance be forgot and never brought to mind?

Song Number Nine

Old Lang Syne

Should old acquaintance be forgot and never brought to mind?
Should old acquaintance be forgot, for old lang syne?
For old lang syne, my friend, for old lang syne.
We’ll drink a cup of kindness yet, for old lang syne.

“Old Lang Syne” means “for old times sake.” This song is often sung at midnight, to welcome the new year.
(61) **Months and Seasons of the Year**

**Key Items**

The Seasons

a. Spring: Everything begins to grow in spring. The months of spring are March, April, and May.

b. Summer: It is very hot in summer. The months of summer are June, July, and August.

c. Autumn / Fall: Both “autumn” and “fall” are acceptable words for the season when trees and plants die. The months of autumn are September, October, and November.

d. Winter: In winter it is very cold. You have to wear warm clothes. Sometimes it snows in winter. The months of winter are December, January, and February.

My home is in Lazhang. In the spring, it is often windy and cold. It rains sometimes. In summer, it’s sometimes hot. The sun shines every day. September, October, and November are the autumn months. In Lazhang it is sometimes cold. It rains sometimes. During the winter months it snows sometimes in Lazhang. But usually there is little snow in Lazhang. Sometimes it is cold.

**Exercises**

A. Write answers to these questions:

a. Where is the writer’s home?

b. What is the writer describing?

c. What is summer like in Lazhang?

d. What is winter like in Lazhang?

e. What is autumn like in Lazhang?

f. What is spring like in Lazhang?

g. Is there much snow in Lazhang in winter?

B. Do you know the months of the year? Match the months.

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. ___January</td>
<td>1. the fourth month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. ___February</td>
<td>2. the sixth month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. ___March</td>
<td>3. the first month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. ___April</td>
<td>4. the eleventh month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. ___May</td>
<td>5. the ninth month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. ___June</td>
<td>6. the tenth month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. ___July</td>
<td>7. the seventh month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. ___August</td>
<td>8. the fifth month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i. ___September</td>
<td>9. the third month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j. ___October</td>
<td>10. the eighth month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k. ___November</td>
<td>11. the twelfth month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l. ___December</td>
<td>12. the second month</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
C. Answer the following questions. If the sentence is true, write “T.” If the sentence is not correct, write “F” for false.

a. ___ In January the weather is very hot.
b. ___ March is a spring month.
c. ___ Snow falls in June.
d. ___ November is cold.
e. ___ Summer months are July and August.
f. ___ Flowers begin to grow in April and May.
g. ___ In September the trees begin to change color.
h. ___ The fourth month of the year is October.
i. ___ School begins each year in September.

D. Read and act out this dialogue with another student.

Zhaxi: Boy, the weather is sure cold. I think the seasons are changing.
Dongzhi: Yes, I agree. Today I’m not wearing many clothes and I’m cold.
Zhaxi: You’re right. I think summer is almost over.
Dongzhi: It’s too bad. Summer is my favorite season.
Zhaxi: Why is that?
Dongzhi: Because the weather is warm and there’s no school!

Now write answers to these questions:

a. What month were you born in? (In what month were you born?)
b. What are your favorite months? (What months do you like best?)
c. What is your favorite season? Why do you like this season best?
d. What is your neighbor’s favorite month?

E. Read this dialogue:

Dawazhiba: When is your birthday, Sangriji?
Sangriji: My birthday is July twenty-fourth (24th). When is your birthday?
Dawazhiba: My birthday is January sixth (6th).

A: When is your birthday?
B: My birthday is ___.

Walk around the room. Ask several students when their birthdays are. Write down their answers.
(62) The Weather

Read these two texts with a neighbor.

1

Luosang: What month is it?
Pencuhangjia: It is March.
Luosang: Is it winter?
Pencuhangjia: No, it isn’t. It isn’t winter. It is spring.
Luosang: Is it hot in Lhasa?
Pencuhangjia: No, it isn’t hot. Sometimes it is cold.
Luosang: Is it windy today?
Pencuhangjia: It is often windy.
Luosang: Does it often rain in spring in Lhasa?
Pencuhangjia: No, it doesn’t often rain in Lhasa in spring. Sometimes it rains.

Jane: Where do you come from?
Yizhuncuo: I come from China. My home is in Tibet.
Jane: What is the climate like there?
Yizhuncuo: It’s very pleasant. It is not very cold and it is not very hot.
Jane: What’s the weather like in spring?
Yizhuncuo: It’s often windy in March. It’s always warm in April and May, but it rains sometimes. The sun shines often.
Jane: What’s it like in summer?
Yizhuncuo: It’s hot sometimes in June, July, and August. The sun shines every day.
Jane: Is it cold or warm in autumn?
Yizhuncuo: It’s always warm in September and October. It’s often cold in November and it rains sometimes.
Jane: Is it very cold in winter?
Yizhuncuo: Sometimes it’s cold in December, January and February. It snows sometimes.
Exercises

A. Write answers to these questions:

a. Who is Luosang talking to?
b. Who is Pencuhangjia talking to?
c. What are Luosang and Pencuhangjia talking about?
d. Where do you think Pencuhangjia’s home is?
e. Is it wet in Lhasa in spring?
f. Who is Yizhuncuo talking to?
g. Who is Jane talking to?
h. What are Yizhuncuo and Jane talking about?
i. Where do you think Yizhuncuo is from?
j. When is it windy?
k. When is it hot?

B. There are many different kinds of weather conditions. Here are the most common conditions.

Match a-j with 1-10.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. falling white ice</th>
<th>a. cold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. a little cold</td>
<td>b. hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. it has not rained for a long time</td>
<td>c. dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. the air is moving quickly</td>
<td>d. cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. opposite of hot</td>
<td>e. sunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. very bright</td>
<td>f. rainy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. H2O is falling</td>
<td>g. windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. the sun is not shining</td>
<td>h. cool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. the air is not shining</td>
<td>i. humid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. very warm</td>
<td>j. snowing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Now write answers to these questions: နေပြည်ထောင်စုသောထောင်စီးဒေသကြီး၏အခြေခံအကြောင်း

a. How is the weather outside today? (What’s the weather like outside now?)
b. What is your favorite kind of weather?
c. Write a short description of what the weather is like in your home. Write at least four sentences.
   Write at least one sentence for each season of the year.
d. What kind of weather do you not like?

c. Read the text that follows: နေပြည်ထောင်စုသောထောင်စီးဒေသကြီး၏အခြေခံအကြောင်း

Qinghai Lake is north of Xining. It is a big lake. Many Tibetans live there. In winter, Qinghai Lake is cold. The days are short and the nights are long. The sun rises late and sets early.

Xining is often windy. In winter Xining is cold. But it is not very cold. There is little snow. The climate of Xining is good.

Yunnan is south of Xining. It is not cold. In winter, Yunnan is not cold. It is warm. Tibetans live in Yunnan.

Haixi is west of Xining. It is not wet. The sun shines every day. Many Tibetans live in Haixi.


Now write answers to these questions: နေပြည်ထောင်စုသောထောင်စီးဒေသကြီး၏အခြေခံအကြောင်း

a. Where is Qinghai Lake?
b. What is winter like at Qinghai Lake?
c. What is the climate like in Xining?
d. What people live in Qinghai?
e. Where do Tibetans live in Qinghai?
f. Is Haixi east of Xining?
g. Where is it often windy?
h. Where is Xining?
i. Where do Tibetans live in Gansu?

•156•
(63) **Directions: north / south / east / west.**

Put the correct word in the spaces below:

```
N   W  ↑   E
```

g. Gansu is ___ of Tibet.
h. Qinghai is ___ of Xinjiang.
i. Lhasa is ___ of Beijing.
j. Shanghai is ___ of Lhasa.
k. Inner Mongolia is ___ of Nanjing.
```
a. Beijing is ___ of Qinghai.
b. Xi’an is ___ of Sichuan.
c. Tibet is ___ of Qinghai.
d. Qingdao is ___ of Qinghai.
e. Xinjiang is ___ of Qinghai.
f. Yunnan is ___ of Qinghai.
```

**Pronunciation Practice Ten**

A. Read this text silently.

B. Now listen to your teacher reading the poem slowly and clearly. Repeat after your teacher:

*Hints on Pronunciation for Foreigners (T.S. Watt)*

I take it you already know
Of tough and bough and cough and dough?
Others may stumble but not you,
On hiccough, thorough, laugh and through.
Well done! And now you wish, perhaps,
To learn of less familiar traps?

Beware of heard, a dreadful word
That looks like beard and sounds like bird,
And dead; its said like bed, not bead-
For goodness’ sake don’t call it “deed”!
Watch out for meat and great and threat
(They rhyme with suite and straight and debt.)

A moth is not a moth in mother
Nor both in bother, broth in brother,
And here is not a match for there
Nor dear and fear for bear and pear,
And then there’s dose and rose and lose
Just look them up - and goose and choose,
And cork and work and card and ward,
And font and front and word and sword
And do and go and thwart and cart
Come, come, I’ve hardly made a start!
A dreadful language? Man alive.
I’d mastered it when I was five.
```

C. Practice reading this text several times. Concentrate on pronouncing all the words clearly.
D. Now, beginning from the front of the class, each of you will get a chance to read this poem as far as you can without making a mistake. If you make an error in pronunciation, your teacher will make a sound like a buzzer. If you hear this sound, sit down. Then it’s your neighbor’s turn. If you can read the whole poem without making a mistake, your teacher will give you a prize.

E. Practice saying these rhyming word pairs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tough / cough</th>
<th>meat / suite</th>
<th>dose / rose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bough / dough</td>
<td>great / straight</td>
<td>goose / choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thorough / through</td>
<td>threat / debt</td>
<td>cork / work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heard / word</td>
<td>moth / mother</td>
<td>card / ward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beard / bird</td>
<td>both / other</td>
<td>font / front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead / bed</td>
<td>broth / brother</td>
<td>word / sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bead / deed</td>
<td>bear / pear</td>
<td>thwart / cart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Problems ទែងទៀង

Mary is a woman who helps people who have problems. They write her letters. After she gets their letters, she writes them answers. She tells them what they should do. Below are five problems. Read them and choose one problem. Next, write a letter stating your solution to the problem. When you are finished, exchange letters with someone in your class and discuss whether you think they are good solutions. Next write a letter to each of these people, telling them what they should do.

A. Dear Mary,
Six years ago, when I was 24, I married my first and only boyfriend. We now have two lovely children!

B. Mary is a woman who helps people who have problems. They write her letters. After she gets their letters, she writes them answers. She tells them what they should do. Below are five problems. Read them and choose one problem. Next, write a letter stating your solution to the problem. When you are finished, exchange letters with someone in your class and discuss whether you think they are good solutions. Next write a letter to each of these people, telling them what they should do.

C. Dear Mary,
Six years ago, when I was 24, I married my first and only boyfriend. We now have two lovely children!

D. Now, beginning from the front of the class, each of you will get a chance to read this poem as far as you can without making a mistake. If you make an error in pronunciation, your teacher will make a sound like a buzzer. If you hear this sound, sit down. Then it’s your neighbor’s turn. If you can read the whole poem without making a mistake, your teacher will give you a prize.

E. Practice saying these rhyming word pairs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tough / cough</th>
<th>meat / suite</th>
<th>dose / rose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bough / dough</td>
<td>great / straight</td>
<td>goose / choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thorough / through</td>
<td>threat / debt</td>
<td>cork / work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heard / word</td>
<td>moth / mother</td>
<td>card / ward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beard / bird</td>
<td>both / other</td>
<td>font / front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead / bed</td>
<td>broth / brother</td>
<td>word / sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bead / deed</td>
<td>bear / pear</td>
<td>thwart / cart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Problems ទែងទៀង

Mary is a woman who helps people who have problems. They write her letters. After she gets their letters, she writes them answers. She tells them what they should do. Below are five problems. Read them and choose one problem. Next, write a letter stating your solution to the problem. When you are finished, exchange letters with someone in your class and discuss whether you think they are good solutions. Next write a letter to each of these people, telling them what they should do.

A. Dear Mary,
Six years ago, when I was 24, I married my first and only boyfriend. We now have two lovely children!

B. Mary is a woman who helps people who have problems. They write her letters. After she gets their letters, she writes them answers. She tells them what they should do. Below are five problems. Read them and choose one problem. Next, write a letter stating your solution to the problem. When you are finished, exchange letters with someone in your class and discuss whether you think they are good solutions. Next write a letter to each of these people, telling them what they should do.

C. Dear Mary,
Six years ago, when I was 24, I married my first and only boyfriend. We now have two lovely children!

D. Now, beginning from the front of the class, each of you will get a chance to read this poem as far as you can without making a mistake. If you make an error in pronunciation, your teacher will make a sound like a buzzer. If you hear this sound, sit down. Then it’s your neighbor’s turn. If you can read the whole poem without making a mistake, your teacher will give you a prize.

E. Practice saying these rhyming word pairs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tough / cough</th>
<th>meat / suite</th>
<th>dose / rose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bough / dough</td>
<td>great / straight</td>
<td>goose / choose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thorough / through</td>
<td>threat / debt</td>
<td>cork / work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heard / word</td>
<td>moth / mother</td>
<td>card / ward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beard / bird</td>
<td>both / other</td>
<td>font / front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead / bed</td>
<td>broth / brother</td>
<td>word / sword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bead / deed</td>
<td>bear / pear</td>
<td>thwart / cart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
B. Dear Mary,
I’m not happy because my daughter has been arrested for shoplifting. I paid the money for her fine and now she is mad at me because she wants more clothes, and I should buy them for her if I really love her. I do love her, but I don’t want to show my love like this. What can I do?

C. Dear Mary,
I recently broke up with a man I loved and he married another woman. I have been going out with someone else ever since. He’s 29 and I’m 26. Now he has asked me to marry him and I suppose I would be mad to refuse. But I don’t love him, though I’m fond of him. I live in a small village, so I’m unlikely to get another chance. I don’t want to be left alone. My mother says love grows if you marry someone who is good to you. Do you think she’s right?

D. Dear Mary,
I have a big problem. I cheat on exams, lie to my friends, and sometimes steal things in stores. I know this is all terrible behavior, but I just can’t help myself. I try to stop but then it only gets worse. I know I need help, but I don’t want to tell my friends because then they won’t trust me. Please help me!

E. Dear Mary,
I love a woman and she loves me. The problem is our families. They don’t want us to be together. Every chance they get they try to create problems between us, but we don’t listen, because we know they’re lies. We want to be happy, but find it increasingly impossible. Should we end our relationship?
Mr. Dongzhi and his wife, Cairangzhoma, and their children live in Jiegu. The children, Lhamoyicuo and Shamba, go to school. Their father takes them to school every day.

Mr. Dongzhi goes to work. He is a farmer. He has several fields. He grows barley and wheat.

Mrs. Cairangzhoma stays at home every day. She does the housework. She makes bread and she cleans the home. She eats her lunch at noon. She likes bread. She likes tea, too.

In the afternoon, Mrs. Cairangzhoma usually visits her friends. They often drink tea together.

In the evening the two children come home from school. They arrive home early.

Mr. Dongzhi comes home from work. He arrives home late.

At night the children always do their homework. They like learning Tibetan, Chinese, and English. Then they usually go to bed. Mr. Dongzhi usually reads his newspapers and magazines, but sometimes he and his wife watch television.
Exercise

Write answers to the following questions:

a. Who usually reads his newspapers and magazines?
b. What does Mr. Dongzhi usually read?
c. Who is Mr. Dongzhi’s wife?
d. Who is Cairangzhoma’s husband?
e. Where do Mr. Dongzhi and his family live?
f. Who arrives home late?
g. Do the children come home late, too?
h. What do Mrs. Cairangzhoma and her friends often do together?
i. At what time does Mrs. Cairangzhoma eat her lunch?
j. Where does Mrs. Cairangzhoma stay every day?
k. Who stays at home every day?
l. Who are Shamba and Lhamoyicuo?
m. Who takes the children to school every day?
n. Who grows barley and wheat?
o. What is Mr. Dongzhi’s job?
p. What is Mrs. Cairangzhoma’s job?
q. Sometimes, what do Mr. Dongzhi and Mrs. Cairangzhoma do?

B. Write answers to these questions: “What do you usually do?”

a. in the morning (In the morning, I usually get up.)
b. in the afternoon
c. in the evening
d. at noon
e. at night

C. I go to school in the morning.

Now do the following in the same way.

a) study English (I study English at noon.)
b) make my bed
c) clean my dormitory room
d) wash my face
e) brush my teeth
f) comb my hair
g) go to class
h) read magazines
i) go to bed
j) do some exercises
k) put on my clothes
l) take off my clothes
Usually do... (II) མཐྲལ་བཅས་འབེབས་པའི།

A. Read this text: རྩོམ་བ་འི་ཕྲུག་གིས།

It is eight o’clock. The children go to school by horse every day. But today, they are going to school on foot. Their school is a big school. Many Tibetan children go there.

It is ten o’clock. Mrs. Lhamoyicuo usually stays at home in the morning. But this morning she is going to the shops. Mrs. Lhamoyicuo wants to buy some potatoes and round onions.

It is four o’clock. In the afternoon, Mrs. Lhamoyicuo usually drinks tea in the living-room. But this afternoon, she is drinking tea in the garden. Mrs. Lhamoyicuo likes tea. She likes to drink black tea with some salt.

It is six o’clock. In the evening, the children usually do their homework. But this evening, they are not doing their homework. At the moment they are playing in the garden. They are playing with a ball. It is a small blue ball.

It is nine o’clock. Mr. Dongzhi usually reads his newspaper at night. He likes to sit in his big green chair. But he’s not reading his newspaper tonight. At the moment, he’s reading an interesting book.
Exercise ပန့်စစ်

Write answers to the following questions:

a. What time do the children go to school every day?
b. What does Mr. Dongzhi usually do at night?
c. Who reads a newspaper at night?
d. At six o’clock, what do the children usually do?
e. Who play in the garden?
f. Where do the children play?
g. What color is the ball?
h. Is the ball large?
i. What do the children usually do in the evening?
j. Who likes to drink tea in the living-room?
k. Does Mrs. Lhamoyicuo like red tea?
l. At ten o’clock, what does Mrs. Lhamoyicuo want to buy?
m. Does Mrs. Lhamoyicuo want to buy some cabbage?
n. How do the children usually go to school?
o. Is the children’s school small?
p. Who go to the children?
q. What color is Mr. Dongzhi’s big chair?

B. Read this text:

Dongzhi: When do you usually wash your face?
Dawazhiba: I usually wash my face in the morning but today I washed my face in the afternoon.
Dongzhi: When do you make your bed?
Dawazhiba: I usually make my bed in the morning but today I didn’t make my bed.
Dongzhi: When do you usually go to bed?
Dawazhiba: I usually go to bed at 11 o’clock at night.
Dongzhi: When do you usually go home?
Dawazhiba: I usually go home in summer.

Exercise ပန့်စစ်

Write answers to the following questions:

a. When do you usually wash your face?
b. When does Dongzhi usually wash his face?
c. Who washed his face in the afternoon?
d. When do you make your bed?
e. When does Dawazhiba make his bed?
f. At what time does Dawazhiba usually go to bed?
g. What does Dawazhiba usually do at eleven o’clock at night?
h. Where does Dawazhiba go in summer?
i. Where do you go in summer?
j. Who goes to bed at eleven at night?
A. Read the following dialogue:

Dawazhiba: Where’s Dongzhi?
Lhamoyicuo: He is in his bedroom. He’s in bed.
Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with him?
Lhamoyicuo: He feels ill.
Dawazhiba: He looks ill.
Lhamoyicuo: We must call the doctor. Dongzhi is ill. He is not well.
Dawazhiba: Yes, we must. Our son is ill. Can you remember the doctor’s telephone number?
Lhamoyicuo: Yes, I can. It’s 775277.
Doctor: Open your mouth, Dongzhi. Show me your tongue. Say ‘ah.’
Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with Dongzhi, doctor?
Doctor: He has a bad cold Dawazhiba, so he must stay in bed for a week. He must drink tea and eat good food. He must not play outside. He must not ride his horse.
Lhamoyicuo: That’s good news for Dongzhi.
Doctor: Good news? Why?
Lhamoyicuo: Because he doesn’t like school! Dongzhi is ill. He must not go to school.
Exercise

Write answers to the following questions:

a. Where is Dongzhi?
b. Why is Dongzhi in bed?
c. Is Dongzhi in the kitchen?
d. Why do Dawazhiba and Lhamoyicuo call the doctor?
e. Why must Dawazhiba stay in bed for a week?

B. Read these short dialogues:

a. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I am ill. I have a headache.
   Dawazhiba: You must take an aspirin.

b. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I have an ear-ache.
   Dawazhiba: You must see a doctor. I will telephone the doctor. Do you know the doctor’s telephone number?
   Dongzhi: Yes, I do. It’s 331777.

c. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I have a toothache.
   Dawazhiba: You must see a dentist.

d. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I have a stomach-ache.
   Dawazhiba: You must drink this medicine. It is good medicine. My mother gave me this medicine.

e. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I have a temperature.
   Dawazhiba: You must go to bed. You must stay in bed for one week.

f. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I have the flu. I feel ill.
   Dawazhiba: You have a temperature, too. You must stay in bed. You must not go to school. You must take some medicine.

g. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I have the measles. I feel ill. I have a temperature. I do not want to eat. I do not want to drink.
   Dawazhiba: We must call the doctor. You must stay in bed. You must not go to school.

h. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I have the mumps. I have a fever, too. I am not well.
   Dawazhiba: We must call the doctor. You must go to bed. You must not play outside on the mountain. You must stay at home.

i. Dawazhiba: What’s the matter with you, Dongzhi?
   Dongzhi: I have a cold. I can’t go to work. I am not well. I feel ill. I must see a doctor.
Dawazhiba: Yes, we must call a doctor. You must stay in bed. You must not go to work. You must stay at home. You must eat good food.

My name is Dongzhi. Today, I am ill. I have a bad cold. I am not well. I am in bed. I must not go to school. I must stay in bed. I must call the doctor. I remember the doctor’s telephone number. It’s 45798. I must take some medicine. I have a temperature.

Doctor: How’s Shamba today?
Lhamoyicuo: He’s better today, thank you, doctor.
Doctor: Can I see him please, Lhamoyicuo?
Lhamoyicuo: Certainly, doctor. Come upstairs. Shamba is in bed in his bedroom.
Doctor: You look very well, Shamba. You are better now, but you must not get up yet. You must stay in bed for another three days. The boy must not go to school yet, Lhamoyicuo. And he must not eat rich food.
Lhamoyicuo: Has he a temperature, doctor?
Doctor: No. He has no temperature.
Lhamoyicuo: Must he stay in bed?
Doctor: Yes. He must remain in bed for another three days. He can get up for about two hours each day but you must keep the room warm. The bedroom must not be cold. Where’s Dazheng this evening?
Lhamoyicuo: He’s in bed, doctor. Can you see him please? He has a bad cold, too!
Doctor: Certainly!

Exercise ཨཿི་དྲིས།

Answer these questions: མཚན་ཉིད་ཉན་ེ་ཞས་ཞེས་པ་ནི་ཨཿི་དྲིས་དེ་བཞིན་གྱི་ཞེས་པ་ནི་ཨཿི་དྲིས་

a. How is Shamba today?
b. Where is Shamba?
c. Is Shamba in the garden?
d. Must Shamba get up?
e. Must Shamba go to school?
f. Must Shamba eat rich food?
g. Does Shamba have a temperature?
h. Must Shamba get up?
i. How many hours can Shamba get up every day?
j. Must the bedroom be cold?
k. Where is Dazheng?
l. Is Dazheng working?
m. What’s the matter with Dazheng?
n. Is Dazheng ill, too?
(67) Illness (II) ནང་ཐོག (༥)

A. Read this conversation: རྣམ་འབྲལ་འཕྲིན།

Dazheng: Don’t call the doctor.
Lhamoyicuo: We must call the doctor! You have a temperature and you have a bad cold!
Dazheng: No, you mustn’t call the doctor. I don’t like doctors. I don’t like to take medicine.

B. Read this dialogue with a neighbor. One of you will be the nurse and one of you will be Dongzhi. རྣམ་འབྲལ་འཕྲིན།

Nurse: Good morning, Mr. Dongzhi.
Dongzhi: Good morning, nurse. I want to see the dentist now, please.
Nurse: Do you have an appointment, Mr. Dongzhi?
Dongzhi: No, I have no appointment but I must see the dentist.
Nurse: Is it very urgent?
Dongzhi: Yes, it is very urgent. I feel awful. I am not well. I have a terrible toothache.
Nurse: Can you come at 10 p.m. on Monday, April 24th?
Dongzhi: I must see the dentist now, nurse.
Nurse: The dentist is very busy at the moment. Can you come at 2:00 p.m.? 
Dongzhi: That’s very late. Can’t the dentist see me now?
Nurse: I’m afraid that he can’t, Mr. Dongzhi. Can’t you wait till this afternoon? Can’t you wait until two o’clock?
Dongzhi: I can wait but my toothache can’t!

Exercise ཞེས་བསྟོན།

Write answers to these questions: རྣམ་འབྲལ་འཕྲིན།

a. Does Dazheng want Lhamoyicuo to call a doctor?
b. Does Lhamoyicuo want to call a doctor?
c. Does Lhamoyicuo have a temperature?
d. Does Lhamoyicuo have a bad cold?
e. Does Dazheng like doctors?
f. Does Dazheng like to take medicine?

B. Read this dialogue with a neighbor. One of you will be the nurse and one of you will be Dongzhi. རྣམ་འབྲལ་འཕྲིན།

Nurse: Good morning, Mr. Dongzhi.
Dongzhi: Good morning, nurse. I want to see the dentist now, please.
Nurse: Do you have an appointment, Mr. Dongzhi?
Dongzhi: No, I have no appointment but I must see the dentist.
Nurse: Is it very urgent?
Dongzhi: Yes, it is very urgent. I feel awful. I am not well. I have a terrible toothache.
Nurse: Can you come at 10 p.m. on Monday, April 24th?
Dongzhi: I must see the dentist now, nurse.
Nurse: The dentist is very busy at the moment. Can you come at 2:00 p.m.?
Dongzhi: That’s very late. Can’t the dentist see me now?
Nurse: I’m afraid that he can’t, Mr. Dongzhi. Can’t you wait till this afternoon? Can’t you wait until two o’clock?
Dongzhi: I can wait but my toothache can’t!
(68) Playing With Matches གཤེགས་པ་བོད་

Read this dialogue གཤེགས་པ་བོད་

Sonanlhamo: Yixi, don’t play with matches. Play on the mountain. Play with your friends!

Yixi: I like to play with matches! I want to play with matches!

Sonanlhamo: I am your mother! You must not play with matches.

Exercise གཤེགས་པ་བོད་

Write answers to these questions: གཤེགས་པ་བོད་བོད་

a. Is Sonanlhamo playing with matches?
b. Is Sonanlhamo playing on the mountain?
c. Is Yixi Sonanlhamo’s mother?
d. Does Yixi like to play with matches?
e. Does Yixi not want to play with matches.
f. Must Yixi play with matches?

Today is hot. It is summer. It is not raining. The sun is shining.

Dazheng and Shamba like drinking beer. They do not like drinking wine. Shamba buys a new brown hat.

Shamba’s home is in Ganzi. He is a Tibetan student and he studies in Beijing. He studies math, English, Tibetan, and Chinese. He likes studying English. English is interesting. His name is Shamba and he is 20 years old.

Today, he and his friend, Dazheng, are going to the shops. Shamba wants to buy a book. Dazheng wants to buy a new hat.

Today is hot. It is summer. It is not raining. The sun is shining.

Dazheng and Shamba are drinking some beer. Dazheng drinks one bottle of beer and Shamba drinks two bottles. Dazheng and Shamba like drinking beer. They do not like drinking wine. Shamba buys an English dictionary. Dazheng buys a new brown hat.

It is evening. They are in the library. They are studying.
Exercises

Write answers to the following questions:

a. Where is Shamba’s home?
b. Is he a Hui student?
c. Where does he go to school?
d. What does Shamba do in Beijing?
e. What does Shamba study?
f. What is Shamba’s age?
g. What do Shamba and his friend want to buy?
h. What’s the weather like?
i. What do Dazheng and Shamba drink?
j. What does Shamba buy?
k. What did Dazheng buy?
l. Who bought an English dictionary?
m. Who bought a new brown hat?
n. In the evening, where are Shamba and Dazheng?
o. What color is Dazheng’s new hat?
p. What is brown?

Show and Tell

Tell the class about an object that means a lot to you. (For example, a photograph, coin, postcard, etc.) Why is this object significant (special) to you?

Pronunciation Practice Eleven

A. The sounds of /v/ and /w/ are often confused by students of English. The following exercises will help you hear the differences between the two sounds. Listen to your teacher. Repeat the following pairs of words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/v/</th>
<th>/w/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. veered</td>
<td>a. weird</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. vicar</td>
<td>b. wicker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vain</td>
<td>c. wane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. very</td>
<td>d. wary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. vent</td>
<td>e. went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. vest</td>
<td>f. west</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. verse</td>
<td>g. worse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. vile</td>
<td>h. while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. vine</td>
<td>i. wine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. rover</td>
<td>j. rower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. moving</td>
<td>k. mooing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. veil</td>
<td>l. wail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Listen to your teacher. You will hear groups of three words with /v/ and /w/. If all three words sound the same, circle “d”. If one of the words sounds different from the other two, circle the letter -a, b, or c- of the word that sounds different.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/v/</th>
<th>/w/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a b c d</td>
<td>5. a b c d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a b c d</td>
<td>6. a b c d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a b c d</td>
<td>7. a b c d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. a b c d</td>
<td>8. a b c d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. a b c d</td>
<td>10. a b c d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Going to do ...

Lhamoyicuo: Hello, Limaocuo. How are you today?
Limaocuo: I’m well, thank you. How are you?
Lhamoyicuo: I’m very well, thanks. Were you at the butcher’s?
Limaocuo: Yes, I was. I was buying some mutton. My family likes mutton. Were you at the butcher’s, too?
Lhamoyicuo: No, I wasn’t. I was buying some tomatoes and potatoes. How’s Dongzhi today?
Limaocuo: He’s very well, thank you.
Lhamoyicuo: Was he absent from school last week?
Limaocuo: Yes, he was. He was absent on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, and Thursday. How are you all keeping?
Lhamoyicuo: Very well, thank you. We’re going to spend two weeks at my mother’s home in Jiegu for the weekend. The countryside is very beautiful in spring.
Limaocuo: Friday, Saturday, and Sunday in the countryside! Aren’t you lucky!
Lhamoyicuo: Yes, we are. Our family enjoys the countryside. My mother has many horses and the children like riding horses. The children like to herd the animals, too.
Limaocuo: We’re going to spend two weeks at my father’s home in Ganzi in summer. The children enjoy going to Ganzi and playing in the countryside. And I like to see my mother and father. They are old now.
Lhamoyicuo: How old are your mother and father?
Limaocuo: My father is 68 and my mother is 67. But they are very well.
Lhamoyicuo: I must go home now and cook dinner. The children like to eat dinner at 6 o’clock. Now, it is half past five. Good-bye Limaocuo.
Limaocuo: Good-bye Lhamoyicuo.
Exercises

A. With another classmate, act out this dialogue.

B. Check the correct person for the "who" questions. "Who" questions are listed on the left side of the dialogue. Circle the correct person.

Puzzle Number Three

Look for the following words in the puzzle below. Words can be found to the right (→), to the left (←), up (↑), down (↓), and diagonally (↗and↙). When you find a word, circle it. Good luck!

a. animals
d. horses
g. school
j. weekend
b. butchers
e. mutton
h. spring
k. Wednesday
c. countryside
f. potatoes
i. tomatoes
l. Yigazei

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Y</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>T</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

•171•
Exercises

A. Put in “the” where necessary.

a. I was at park on Sunday.
b. Dongzhi was at office on Friday.
c. My daughter was at doctor’s school on Wednesday.
d. Lhamoyicuo was at grocer’s on Thursday.
e. I was on grassland in summer.
f. My son was in country on Saturday.
g. I was at market on Wednesday, May 1st.
h. She was at stationer’s on Thursday, December 12th.
i. We were at monastery on Sunday, August 8th.
j. The two boys were at dairy on Saturday, July 7th.

B. Choose the right answers:

1. I like apples, what about ____? (a) her (b) she (c) he (d) us
2. ____ you speak English? Yes, I ____. (a) Do; does (b) Do; do (c) Does; do (d) Do; do
3. ____ your friends speak Tibetan? (a) Are (b) Is (c) Do (d) Am
4. She doesn’t like the milk tea ______., (a) to (b) very (c) all at (d) at all
5. “I don’t know,” he ____. (a) say (b) saying (c) saies (d) says
6. They like playing basketball ______., (a) all at (b) very much (c) little (d) lot
7. The child ______ his homework in the evening. (a) does (b) do (c) makes (d) make
8. Look, they are _____ kites over there. (a) fly (b) flying (c) fliing (d) flied
9. He works _____ a farm. (a) in (b) of (c) at (d) on
10. Can you ride a _____? (a) boat (b) cat (c) bike (d) kite
11. She ______ in a school. (a) study (b) studies (c) studys (d) will studying
12. Does he like _____ in Tibet. (a) working (b) works (c) work (d) is working
13. What time do you go to work? ______ (a) Every day. (b) At 7:30. (c) Seven days. (d) No.
14. Workers work ____ a factory. (a) from (b) on (c) in (d) far
15. I think people are very _____. (a) friend (b) friendly (c) friends (d) friendful

Play Number Two: The Vase of Gold

Characters

A foolish man

The foolish man’s friend (Clever Man)

The friend’s old father

A narrator

A king

Many people

•172•
Narrator: This story happened a long time ago. One day a foolish man finds a vase of gold.

Foolish Man: I feel hot. Plowing in the field makes me very tired. Hey! What’s this? It’s a vase. I wonder what’s inside. It’s gold! I’m rich! But I wonder if it’s really gold. I’ll go to my friend’s home and ask him. Everyone says he’s very intelligent.
Narrator: The foolish man walks to his friend’s home.

Foolish Man: Hello, my friend, how are you today?
Clever Man: Nice to see you, my friend. I’m well. How about you?
Foolish Man: I’m also well. Today I found a vase when I was plowing. I think it’s full of gold. I came to your home to let you have a look. Everyone says that you are very intelligent. Do you think this is real gold?

Clever Man: Gold! Let’s take a look.
Narrator: They examine the gold together.
Clever Man: Yes, it’s really gold. Now, you are a very rich man.
Foolish Man: You are my best friend. I want to share this gold with you. What should we do next?
Clever Man: That’s very kind of you. I know where there is an old tree. Let’s go there and bury it.
Narrator: The two go to the old tree, dig a hole, and bury the gold.

Clever Man: When either of us wants some gold, let’s come here together and dig it up.

Foolish Man: That’s a good idea. I agree.
Narrator: The clever man soon became greedy. He wanted all the gold for himself.

Clever Man: (several days later): My friend is very stupid. I’ll just go dig up the gold and keep it for myself. Why should my stupid friend have so much gold?
Narrator: The clever man goes to the old tree and digs up the gold.
Clever Man: Ha, ha. Now I’ve got all the gold for myself. I’ll put the soil back in the hole. When my stupid friend asks me, I’ll say I don’t know why the gold is gone.

Narrator: A few days later the foolish man visits his friend.
Foolish Man: My friend, I need some money. Let’s go together to the tree and dig up the vase.
Clever Man: That’s a good idea. I also need some money. Let’s go.
Narrator: The two walk to the tree and begin digging.
Clever Man: I can’t believe it! The gold is gone. How terrible you are! You stole the gold! Why did you cheat me?
Foolish Man: No! No! I didn’t steal the gold. I found the gold. I wanted to share it with you. I’m an honest man.

Clever Man: I don’t believe you. Let’s go to the king and tell him what happened.

Foolish Man: OK, let’s go.

Narrator: The two men go to the king’s palace. They visit the king. Each man tells his story.

King: Well, I don’t know who is telling the truth. Let’s go to the old tree next week on Wednesday. We will ask the local deity to decide this question.

Narrator: The two men both go to their homes. The clever man talks to his father.

Clever Man: Dear Father, you must help me. I stole my stupid friend’s gold. Next Wednesday we will go to the old tree early. The tree is hollow. I’ll put you inside. The king will ask the local deity for an answer. You may answer from inside the tree. You may say that the foolish man is the thief.

Clever Man’s Father: OK.

Narrator: The next Wednesday the two friends, the king, and many people go to the old hollow tree.

King: Dear local deity, we have come here to ask you a question. Some gold was stolen. These two men said that they didn’t steal the gold. You please tell us who stole the gold.

Clever Man’s Father (from inside the tree): The foolish man stole the gold.

The king, all the people, and the clever man: Oh! The deity has spoken! The foolish man stole the gold! He should be executed!

Foolish Man: This is not true. I’m not afraid of anything.

Narrator: The foolish man knows that the king will soon kill him. He is not afraid. He puts much wood around the tree. He burns the wood.

Clever Man’s Father: (Coughs). I can’t stay inside the tree. It’s too hot. There is too much smoke. I can’t breathe. I must get out.

Narrator: The old man climbs out of the tree. The king asks him some questions. The king now understands the clever man did not tell the truth.

The king: People say that you are clever. I don’t think so. Clever people are usually honest. Telling lies is stupid. Now, because you wanted this other man to die, you must die.

Narrator: The king orders some men to kill the clever man. Later, the foolish man gets the vase of gold from the clever man’s father. He takes the gold to his village and helps poor people with it. He is not called “foolish man” again.
A. Act this story out with several other students in your classroom.

B. Write at least ten questions about the story. Next, write the answers to your questions.

C. What lesson do you think that this story teaches?
(70) Review

A. Choose the correct answer.

a. I was play / playing yesterday.
b. Yesterday, I was / were playing.
c. Today I am played / playing.
d. Today I plays / play.
e. What are you does / doing?
f. What is he did / doing?
g. What did he do / doing?
h. What was Dongzhi doing / did?
i. What am / are / is the teacher doing?
j. What are / am I doing?
k. What are the students doing / did?
l. What is / are they doing / did?
m. Where is he going / went?

B. Write answers to these questions:

a. Who are you?
b. How are you?
c. Are you a student?
d. Are you a man, a woman, a boy, or a girl?
e. What are you all?
f. Is that right?
g. How many students are there in the class?
h. How many windows are there in the room?
j. Is this right, “Six and four are nine?”

C. Make these sentences plural:

The sheep is running on the mountain. (The sheep are running on the mountain.)
The cow is running on the mountain. (The cows are running on the mountain.)

a. The man is sitting at the table.
b. A child is playing near the tree.
c. Is the man eating an apple?
d. The woman is not smoking a cigarette.
There is a big horserace on the grassland near our village every year. In 2006 in spring, there was a very big race.

There were hundreds of people there. Many Tibetan people were there. My wife and I were at the horserace. Our friends, Dawazhiba and Sonanlamo, were there, too. You can see us in the crowd. We are standing on the left. My wife, Lhamoyicuo, has a long beautiful brown Tibetan robe. My Tibetan robe is also brown. My Tibetan robe is short, it is not long. Lhamoyicuo and I are wearing Tibetan hats, too. They are brown hats.

There were three hundred horses in the race. There were brown horses, red horses, white horses, big horses, and small horses. Children were riding the horses. Children are small. They can ride horses and the horses are not tired. The horses can run for a long time and not feel tired.

It was an exciting finish. The children’s families were waiting for the children. The race was two hours. The children were tired and the horses were tired, too. It was an exciting finish. The winner was Yixī. Yixī is eight years old. He was riding a big black horse. The horse was number seventy-seven. Yixī’s mother and father said, “Yixī, aren’t you lucky!” The horse was hot. Seven other horses were just behind him.

On the way home, my wife said to me, “Don’t run so quickly on your horse! You are excited. You are not Yixī!”
Exercises མེ་ཏོག

A. Write answers to these questions: མེ་ཏོག བི་མི་བཞི་བཞི་ལོ་བཞི་བཞི་ངོ་

a. Where is there a big horserace every year?
b. When was there a big horserace?
c. Was the horserace small?
d. Was the horserace in winter?
e. Who are Dawazhiba and Sonanhamo?
f. Where are Lhamoyicuo and her husband standing?
g. Is Lhamoyicuo’s robe blue?
h. What color is Lhamoyicuo’s robe?
i. Is Lhamoyicuo’s robe short?
j. Is Lhamoyicuo’s husband’s robe long?
k. How many horses were there in the race?
l. Were there five hundred horses in the race?
m. What color were the race horses?
n. Who were riding the horses?
q. Was the finish interesting?
r. Who were waiting for the children?
s. How long was the race?
t. Who were tired?
u. What did Yixi’s mother say?
v. Was Yixi lucky?
w. Is Yixi 18 years old?
x. Was Yixi’s horse white?
y. What number was Yixi’s horse?
z. Was Yixi’s horse cold?
aa. How many horses were just behind Yixi?
bb. What did Lhamoyicuo say to her husband on the way home?
cc. Was Lhamoyicuo’s husband excited?

B. Have you ever seen or heard about a horserace? Write several sentences describing the horserace you have seen or heard about. མེ་ཏོག བི་མི་བཞི་བཞི་ལོ་བཞི་བཞི་ངོ་
(72) **Dazheng Is Awful**

Lhamoyicuo: What’s Dazheng like, Limaocuo?

Limaocuo: He’s awful! He telephoned me five times yesterday and three times the day before yesterday.

Lhamoyicuo: He telephoned the office yesterday morning and yesterday afternoon. My boss, Mr. Dongzhi, answered the telephone.

Limaocuo: What did your boss say to him?

Lhamoyicuo: He said, “Miss Lhamoyicuo is typing letters. She can not speak to you now!” Then I arrived home at six o’clock yesterday evening. He telephoned again. But I didn’t answer the phone!

Limaocuo: Did he telephone again last night?

Lhamoyicuo: Yes, he did. He telephoned at nine o’clock.

Limaocuo: What did you say to him?

Lhamoyicuo: I said, “This is Lhamoyicuo’s mother. Please don’t telephone my daughter again!”

Limaocuo: Did he telephone again?

Lhamoyicuo: No, he didn’t!
Exercise

Write answers to these questions:

a. What is Dazheng like?

b. Who telephoned Lhamoyicuo yesterday?

c. How many times did he telephone yesterday?

d. Did he telephone the day before yesterday?

e. How many times did Dazheng telephone the day before yesterday?

f. Who telephoned the office yesterday morning?

g. Who telephoned the office yesterday afternoon?

h. Who answered the telephone?

i. What did Lhamoyicuo’s boss say to Dazheng?

j. Who was typing letters?

k. Who could not speak to Dazheng?

l. Who arrived home at six o’clock yesterday evening?

m. What time did Lhamoyicuo arrive home yesterday evening?

n. Did Lhamoyicuo arrive home yesterday in the morning?

o. Who telephoned Lhamoyicuo yesterday evening?

p. Did Lhamoyicuo answer the telephone?

q. Who telephoned Lhamoyicuo last night?

r. What time did Dazheng telephone Lhamoyicuo last night?

s. What did Lhamoyicuo say to Dazheng when he telephoned last night?

t. Did Dazheng telephone Lhamoyicuo again?

u. Does Dazheng like Lhamoyicuo?

v. Does Lhamoyicuo like Dazheng?
Mrs. Mills Visits Rebgong มองสิ่งที่เป็นวัฒนธรรมท้องถิ่น

The week before last, Mrs. Mills, a fifty-seven year old American woman, went to Rebgong. She wanted to see some temples there and learn about Tibetan culture. Mrs. Mills thinks Tibetan culture is very interesting. She is particularly interested in Buddhist religious paintings. She does not know Qinghai very well and she lost her way. Suddenly she saw a woman near a bus-stop. “I can ask her the way,” she said to herself.

“Excuse me,” she said. “Can you tell me the way to Rebgong please?”

The woman smiled pleasantly. She did not understand English! She spoke Tibetan. She was a housewife.

Very slowly the woman said, “I’m sorry. I do not speak English.”

Mrs. Mills saw a young man also standing by the bus-stop. She asked him, “Do you speak English?” He also smiled pleasantly and said, “Yes. I speak a little English.” The young man was a Tibetan student from the Rebgong Teachers’ Training School. Mrs. Mills was very happy. Mrs. Mills said, “Can you please tell me the way to Rebgong?” I want to go to Rebgong but I don’t speak Tibetan. I do not know the way.” The young Tibetan man, Dongzhi, said, “Yes, I am going to Rebgong. We can go together!” Mrs. Mills said, “Thank you very much!”

A bus came to the bus stop. Mrs. Mills and Dongzhi went to Rebgong together. Mrs. Mills liked Rebgong. She saw many monks and many beautiful paintings.
Exercises ষোড়শাঙ্গ

A. Write answers to these questions: ষোড়শাঙ্গের প্রশ্নগুলির প্রতিকৃতি

a. Who went to Rebgong?
b. What was Mrs. Mills’ nationality?
c. Was Mrs. Mills English?
d. How old was Mrs. Mills?
e. What did Mrs. Mills want to do?
f. What was interesting?
g. Did Mrs. Mills know Qinghai very well?
h. Where is Rebgong?
i. Who did Mrs. Mills ask first?
j. Who did Mrs. Mills ask second?
k. Why did the woman not tell Mrs. Mills the way to Rebgong?
l. Who was the young man?
m. Where did the young man study?
n. Was the young man a policeman?
o. What did the woman tell Mrs. Mills?
p. Where did Dongzhi and Mrs. Mills go?
q. What language did Mrs. Mills speak?
r. Did Mrs. Mills speak Tibetan?
s. What country was Mrs. Mills from?
t. Who speaks Tibetan and English?
u. Who smiled pleasantly?
w. Who were standing at the bus-stop?
x. What did Mrs. Mills like?
y. What did Mrs. Mills see?

B. Imagine a person from another country is going to visit your home. What interesting places near your home would you take them to see? Write a short description. অন্য দেশের লোককে তোমার বাড়িতে ভ্রমণ করার জন্য কী স্থান আসামোতে নিয়ে যেতে পারে? সেদের সাথে কী ঘটনা হতে পারে?
(74) **Uncomfortable Shoes.**

**Lhamoyicuo:** Have you any red shoes like these? I like these shoes and I want to buy some shoes like these.

**Salesman:** What size do you want?

**Lhamoyicuo:** I want size seven.

**Salesman:** What color?

**Lhamoyicuo:** Red.

**Salesman:** I’m sorry. We haven’t any red shoes like those.

**Lhamoyicuo:** But my sister bought this pair last month.

**Salesman:** Did she buy them here?

**Lhamoyicuo:** No, she bought them in Beijing.

**Salesman:** We had some shoes like those a week ago but we haven’t any now.

**Lhamoyicuo:** Can you get a pair for me please?

**Salesman:** I’m afraid that I can’t. They were in fashion last year and the year before last. But they’re not in fashion this year. These shoes are in fashion now. Do you like them?

**Lhamoyicuo:** They look very uncomfortable.

**Salesman:** They are very uncomfortable. But women always wear uncomfortable shoes!

---

**Lhamoyicuo:** Have you any red shoes like these? I like these shoes and I want to buy some shoes like these.

**Salesman:** What size do you want?

**Lhamoyicuo:** I want size seven.

**Salesman:** What color?

**Lhamoyicuo:** Red.

**Salesman:** I’m sorry. We haven’t any red shoes like those.

**Lhamoyicuo:** But my sister bought this pair last month.

**Salesman:** Did she buy them here?

**Lhamoyicuo:** No, she bought them in Beijing.

**Salesman:** We had some shoes like those a week ago but we haven’t any now.

**Lhamoyicuo:** Can you get a pair for me please?

**Salesman:** I’m afraid that I can’t. They were in fashion last year and the year before last. But they’re not in fashion this year. These shoes are in fashion now. Do you like them?

**Lhamoyicuo:** They look very uncomfortable.

**Salesman:** They are very uncomfortable. But women always wear uncomfortable shoes!
Exercise

Write answers to these questions:

a. What does Lhamoyicuo want?
b. Does Lhamoyicuo want to buy a hat?
c. Does Lhamoyicuo want to buy black shoes?
d. What size shoes does Lhamoyicuo want?
e. Does Lhamoyicuo want size five shoes?
f. What color shoes does Lhamoyicuo want?
g. Who bought shoes last month?
h. Did Lhamoyicuo’s mother buy shoes last month?
i. Where did Lhamoyicuo’s sister buy the shoes?
j. Did Lhamoyicuo’s sister buy the shoes in Shanghai?
k. Does the salesman have the shoes Lhamoyicuo wants?
l. When did the salesman have the shoes Lhamoyicuo wants?
m. Can the salesman get the shoes Lhamoyicuo wants?
n. When were the shoes Lhamoyicuo wants in fashion?
o. Are the shoes Lhamoyicuo wants in fashion this year?
p. Are the shoes that are in fashion now comfortable?
q. Who always wear uncomfortable shoes?
r. Do women always wear comfortable shoes?
Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo live on a tall mountain with many trees. They are very poor. They have no animals. They do not have any sons and daughters. They have no children. They work very hard. Now, Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo are old. Dongzhi says, “Lhamoyicuo, what are we going to do? We are old now and we have no children.”

Lhamoyicuo says, “We must go to the temple. We will ask Buddha to give us a child.”

Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo go to a temple. They ask Buddha to please give them a child. Two months later Lhamoyicuo’s knee is very big. Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo do not know why Lhamoyicuo’s knee is very large. After nine months, Lhamoyicuo’s knee is very very big. Dongzhi takes a knife. He cuts the knee. A bawog (frog) jumps out. Dongzhi does not like the frog. Lhamoyicuo says, “Dongzhi, I am this frog’s mother. You must like the frog.”

The frog says, “You are my mother and father.” Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo are very happy. The frog can speak Tibetan!

Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi like the frog. The frog is their son. They give Bawog some good food every day. They like Bawog.

Three years later Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi are very old. Bawog is not happy. His mother and father must work very hard. Bawog says, “Mother, I want to marry. I want to marry that rich man’s daughter.”

Lhamoyicuo says, “Bawog, you are a frog. You are not a man. The rich man does not like frogs. He does not want you to marry his daughter. He may kill you. Do not go to his home. Do not ask to marry his daughter.” Bawog says, “Mother, don’t worry. Now, I am going to the rich man’s home. I want to marry his daughter.”

Bawog goes to the rich man’s home. He goes to the rich man’s door. He says very loudly, “Rich Man, I want to marry your beautiful daughter! Please give her to me!” The rich man sees Bawog. He laughs. You are a frog. You are not a man. You can’t marry my daughter!”

Bawog says, “You must give me your daughter! If you do not give me your daughter, I will weep!” The rich man says, “Weep if you want to. You can not marry my beautiful daughter!”

Bawog weeps. The sky is black. There is much rain. The rich man is afraid. He says, “Please stop weeping! You may marry my daughter!” Bawog stops weeping. The rain stops, also.

The rich man’s daughter sees Bawog. She says, “I do not like you. I do not want to marry a frog. I am a woman. I want to marry a handsome young Tibetan man!”

Bawog says, “OK. If you do not want to marry me, I do not want to marry you!”

Bawog says to the rich man, “Your oldest daughter does not want to marry me. She does not like
me. I do not like her. I do not want to marry her. I want to marry your second daughter.”

The rich man says, “No, you can not marry my second daughter.”

Bawog says, “I will hop.”

The rich man says, “Hop if you want. You can not marry my beautiful second daughter.” Bawog hops. Mountains shake.

The rich man is afraid. He says, “Please stop. You can marry my second daughter!”

Bawog stops hopping. The mountains stop shaking. Second Daughter sees Bawog. She does not like Bawog. She says, “I do not like you. You are a frog. I do not want to marry a frog. I want to marry a handsome young rich man!”

Bawog says, “I do not like you. I do not want to marry you!”

Bawog says to the rich man, “Your first daughter and your second daughter do not want to marry me. I do not want to marry them. Please give me your third daughter.”

The rich man says, “No! No! No! You cannot marry my third daughter. She is very beautiful. She does not want to marry you! You are a frog. Girls do not want to marry frogs! They want to marry handsome young men!”

Bawog says, “I will laugh.” The rich man says, “Please laugh!”

Bawog laughs. The rich man’s house walls shake. The rich man is afraid! He says, “Please stop laughing! You can marry my Third Daughter!”

Third Daughter sees Bawog. She thinks he is very interesting. She says, “I will marry him. He is not a frog. He is very strong. Perhaps he is a god’s son! He is kind.”

Bawog and Third Daughter go to Bawog’s home. Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo are very happy. Third Daughter is a good woman. She is a good wife. At night Bawog takes off his frog clothes. He is a young handsome man. He is not a frog. In the morning, Bawog is a frog again.

One year later, Dongzhi and Lhamoyicuo want to go to a large horserace. Third Daughter wants to go, too. Bawog says, “I can not go to the horserace. I am very small. Mother and Father, please go.” Dongzhi, Lhamoyicuo, and Third Daughter go to the horserace. It is a very large horserace. Many people come to the horserace.

The young man first rides very slowly. Then he rides very fast. His horse is flying! The young man wins the horserace. Third Daughter wants to see the young man. She sees him. She says to Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi, “I am ill. I am not well. I want to go home.”

Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi say, “Yes. Please go home. You must rest in bed.”

Third Daughter goes home. She does not see Bawog. She sees some frog clothes. Third Daughter is not happy. She burns the frog clothes. Suddenly Bawog comes home. He is a young man. He is not a frog. Bawog looks at the frog clothes. They are burned. He is not happy. He is not well. He says, “You burned my frog clothes. Now I must die.” Bawog is very ill. Third Daughter is weeping. Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi come home. They see Bawog is very ill. They aren’t happy. They weep, too. Bawog dies.
सन्निश्चित गरिन्छ हामीले रोचक रूपमा विश्वासपूर्वक प्रस्तुत क्षमा, पर्स तपाईको निर्देश प्रमाण राख्नुहोस्। 


catch
Exercises

A. Write answers to these questions:

a. Where do Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi live?
b. Do Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi want children?
c. Do Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi have children?
d. Where do Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi go?
e. What do Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi do at the temple?
f. Does Lhamoyicuo’s knee become very small?
g. Can Bawog talk? What language does Bawog speak? Can Bawog speak English?
h. Does Bawog want to marry?
i. Who does Bawog want to marry?
j. What does Bawog say to the rich man?
k. Does the rich man want Bawog to marry his daughter?
l. Does the rich man’s first daughter want to marry Bawog?
m. Does Bawog want to marry the rich man’s first daughter?
n. Does Bawog marry the rich man’s second daughter?
o. Does Second Daughter want to marry Bawog?
p. Does the rich man want Third Daughter to marry Bawog?
q. Does Bawog want to marry Third Daughter?
r. Does Third Daughter want to marry Bawog?
s. Who does Third Daughter marry?
t. Who does Bawog marry?
u. When do Third Daughter, Lhamoyicuo, and Dongzhi go to the horserace?
v. Who wins the horserace?
w. Who goes home first?
x. What does Third Daughter see at home?
y. What does Third Daughter do to Bawog’s clothes?
z. When does Bawog come home?
aa. Is Bawog well?
bb. Are Dongzhi, Lhamoyicuo, and Third Daughter happy?
c. Does Bawog die?
dd. Who dies?
e. Does Third Daughter die?

B. There are many Tibetan folktales and fables. You must know several. Write one that you like and know well. When you finish, tell it to your neighbor.
Dongzhi: What are you doing this morning Lhamoyicuo?
Lhamoyicuo: I’m making a long shopping list, Dongzhi.
Dongzhi: What do we need?
Lhamoyicuo: We need a lot of things this week. I must go to the store. We haven’t got much tea and we haven’t got any sugar or salt.
Dongzhi: What about vegetables?
Lhamoyicuo: We haven’t got many tomatoes, but we’ve got a lot of potatoes. I must go to the butcher’s, too. We need some mutton. We haven’t got any mutton at all.
Dongzhi: Have we got any beer and wine?
Lhamoyicuo: No, we haven’t. And I’m not going to get any!
Dongzhi: I hope that you’ve got some money.
Lhamoyicuo: I haven’t got much.
Dongzhi: Well I haven’t got much either.
Exercise खुलासा

Write answers to these questions: खुलासा

a. What is Lhamoyicuo doing?
b. Is Lhamoyicuo reading a book?
c. Is Lhamoyicuo making a shopping list?
d. Who is Lhamoyicuo?
e. Who is Dongzhi?
f. Is Lhamoyicuo Dongzhi’s husband?
g. Is Dongzhi Lhamoyicuo’s wife?
h. Is it evening?
i. Is it morning?
j. Where is Lhamoyicuo?
k. Where is Dongzhi?
l. Where are Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi?
m. Do Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi have much tea?
n. Is Lhamoyicuo going to buy some tea?
o. Where must Lhamoyicuo go?
p. Must Lhamoyicuo go to school?
q. Must Lhamoyicuo go to the butcher’s?
r. What is Lhamoyicuo making?
s. Where is Lhamoyicuo going to go?
t. Is Lhamoyicuo sleeping?
u. Does Lhamoyicuo have many tomatoes?
v. Does Lhamoyicuo have many potatoes?
w. Where must Lhamoyicuo buy meat?
x. Does Lhamoyicuo have much mutton?
y. Does Lhamoyicuo need some meat?
z. Does Lhamoyicuo want to buy some beer and wine?
aa. Does Dongzhi want Lhamoyicuo to buy some beer and wine?
bb. Do Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi have any beer and wine?
cc. Does Lhamoyicuo have much money?
dd. Does Dongzhi have much money?
e. Do Lhamoyicuo and Dongzhi have much money?
Dazheng: Hello, Lhamoyicuo! Where’s Dongzhi?

Lhamoyicuo: He’s upstairs. He’s having a bath. Dongzhi!

Dongzhi: Yes?

Lhamoyicuo: Dazheng is here.

Dongzhi: I’m nearly ready.

Dongzhi: Hello, Dazheng. Have a cigarette.

Dazheng: No, thanks, Dongzhi. I don’t smoke.

Dongzhi: Have a glass of wine then.

Dazheng: OK. Thanks. I like wine and I’ll have a small glass.

Dongzhi: Is dinner ready, Lhamoyicuo?

Lhamoyicuo: It’s nearly ready. We can have dinner at seven o’clock.

Dongzhi: Dazheng and I had lunch together today. We went to a restaurant.

Lhamoyicuo: What did you have?

Dongzhi: We had yak meat and potatoes.

Lhamoyicuo: Oh!

Dongzhi: What’s the matter, Lhamoyicuo?

Lhamoyicuo: Well, you’re going to have yak meat and potatoes again tonight!
Exercise စာသီးသီး

Write answers to these questions:

a. Is Lhamoyicuo taking a bath?
b. Is Dazheng taking a bath?
c. Is Lhamoyicuo upstairs?
d. Is Dazheng upstairs?
e. What is Dongzhi doing?
f. Is Dongzhi reading a book?
g. Does Dazheng want a cigarette?
h. Does Dazheng like cigarettes?
i. Does Dazheng like wine?
j. Does Lhamoyicuo drink some wine?
k. What is Lhamoyicuo doing?
l. Is Dongzhi cooking dinner?
m. Is it morning? Is it afternoon?
n. Who had lunch together?
o. Did Dongzhi and Dazheng have lunch together yesterday?
q. What did Dongzhi and Dazheng have for lunch?
r. Did Dongzhi and Dazheng have mutton for lunch?
s. What is Lhamoyicuo cooking for dinner?
t. Is Lhamoyicuo cooking mutton for dinner?
u. Is Dazheng cooking dinner?
v. What are they going to have for dinner tonight?
A cunning man fed his donkey only wheat and barley. One day he discovered a dead leopard in a forest. He skinned it. Then he put the leopard-skin on his donkey. Next, he led the donkey to his neighbors’ fields. He wanted his donkey to eat his neighbors’ crops. “There is a leopard in our fields,” the villagers said. They said this because the donkey was wearing a leopard-skin. They did not know it was really a donkey. The villagers were very worried. They were also angry. They went to the field where the leopard-skin donkey was. They killed the “leopard.” They were surprised because it was the crafty man’s donkey. It was not a leopard.

Exercises

A. Write answers to these questions:

a. Who was cunning?
b. Who fed his donkey wheat and barley?
c. What was fed to the donkey?
d. Who fed the donkey?
e. Who discovered?
f. What was discovered?
g. Where was the dead leopard discovered?
h. What was discovered in the forest?
i. What was skinned?
j. Who skinned?
k. What did the cunning man do with the leopard-skin?
l. Where did the man take the donkey to his neighbors’ fields?
m. Why were the villagers afraid?
n. Why were the villagers angry?
o. Who killed the donkey?
p. Who were surprised?
q. Why were they surprised?

B. Act out this story. One person will be the cunning man, another student will be the donkey, and other students will be the villagers. One student will also be the narrator.
Don’t lie,
If you do,
Others will soon know;
As happened to the cat.

A cat often stole things from a monk. One day the monk found the cat stealing his prayer beads. The monk was very angry. The monk jerked the cat’s tail. The cat’s tail was broken.

Now the cat’s tail was broken. He could not hunt. He became very weak and hungry. He sat quietly.

The monk’s prayer beads were around his neck. A mouse came near. The cat said to the mouse, “I am a cat god. I never kill. I don’t steal. I don’t have sex. I never drink liquor. I don’t eat meat. Please follow my example!”

The poor mouse believed the cat. He called some other mice. Then asked the cat to teach them some scriptures. The cat agreed to become their teacher. They began having classes.

Soon, however, the number of mice students became less and less. In class, the cat sat on a millstone. The mice walked around him, reciting their lesson. The cat always secretly caught the last mouse and ate it. Some days later the mice were suspicious. The mice king looked at the cat’s excrement. He found some bones and hair in it. The mice king talked to the cat. He said, “What do you usually eat?”

“Roots. I never eat anything with blood,” the cat said.

The mice king did not believe the cat. He talked to the other cats. He said, “We will give the cat a bell. We will put it around his neck. When the bell rings, we will be careful.”

In the next class, the mice put the bell around the cat’s neck. A few minutes later, as the mice walked around the millstone, the bell rang. The bell rang because the cat had caught a mouse. The mice king sang:

Our teacher is fat,
But my mice are thin,
Our broken-tail teacher must leave,
You only eat roots,
So how can you defecate hair and bones?

“This happened because I did not hide my excrement,” said the unhappy cat. Later, mice did not like cats. And cats always bury their excrement.
Exercises

A. Rewrite this text as a play and act it out.

B. Write answers to these questions:

a. Who often stole things?

b. What were things stolen from?

c. Why did the monk jerk the cat’s tail?

d. How was the cat’s tail broken?

e. Why could the cat not hunt?

f. Why did the cat become weak and hungry?

g. Why did the cat sit quietly?

h. Where were the monk’s prayer beads?

i. What came near the cat?

j. What did the cat tell the mouse?

k. What did the cat say that he did not do?

l. Did the mouse believe the cat?

m. What did the mice ask the cat to do?

n. What did they begin having?

o. What became less and less?

p. Where did the cat sit?

q. What did the cat do secretly?

r. Who became suspicious?

s. Why did they become suspicious?

t. What did the mouse ask the cat?

u. What did the cat answer?

v. What did the mice want to give the cat?

w. When did the mice give the cat a bell?

x. Why did the bell ring?

y. What did the mice king sing?

z. Was the cat happy or sad?

aa. Why do cats always bury their excrement?

C. What lesson do you think this story teaches? Write your answer. Then read another student’s answer. Are your answers different or the same?
A thief wanted to steal an old couple’s cow. He hid in a large tree near the old couple’s home. A tiger came to the tree. The tiger also wanted to steal the old couple’s cow. The tiger sat quietly under the tree.

Soon night came. The sky had many black clouds. The old woman shouted to her husband, “Do you think a thief will come tonight?” “I’m not afraid of anything except the Great Zaa,” the old man shouted back.

The tiger and the thief did not know something. Every night the old couple said this very loudly. They said this every night to frighten away robbers.

The tiger and thief thought that the Great Zaa must be very terrible. The tiger and thief both wondered if the Great Zaa would come.

The thief looked down. He saw a monster with glowing eyes. He thought it was the Great Zaa. He was very afraid. Urine ran down his leg. The urine fell onto the tiger’s head.

The tiger looked up. He saw something in the tree. He thought it was the Great Zaa. He was so afraid that his heart broke. He fell dead to the ground. At the same time, the thief fell from the tree. He hit the grow with his head. He also died.

The tiger looked up. He saw something in the tree. He thought it was the Great Zaa. He was so afraid that his heart broke. He fell dead to the ground. At the same time, the thief fell from the tree. He hit the grow with his head. He also died.
Exercises

A. Rewrite this story as a play and act it out in your classroom with other students.

B. Write at least twenty questions and answer them.

C. Match the words in the second column with the words in the first column. More than one answer is possible.
A tortoise lived in the same lake with two geese. It did not rain for a long time. The lake dried up. There was no more water.

The geese said they wanted to fly away. They wanted to find another lake. The tortoise said, “Oh, my good friends, please don’t leave me.”

“We don’t want to leave you here, but you cannot fly,” the geese said.

“I have an idea,” the tortoise said. “I’ll hold a stick in my mouth. You will each hold one end. That way I can go with you.”

A few minutes later they were flying. The tortoise was holding the stick in his mouth. The geese were holding the two ends. They were feeling good.

They flew over a village. Some children saw them. The children shouted, “Look! Up in the sky! How clever those geese are to carry a tortoise!”

A few minutes later they flew over a grassland. Several shepherd boys saw them. The shepherd boys shouted, “Look! What intelligent geese!”

The tortoise was very angry. He thought that this was his idea. It was not the geese’s idea. He shouted, “It’s my idea!” As soon as he opened his mouth, he fell to the ground and died.
Exercises

A. Are the following sentences true or false? If a sentence is false, explain why. Write your explanation.

a. The tortoise and the geese lived together.

b. The geese and the tortoise wanted to go to another lake.

c. It rained often.

d. The lake was dry.

e. The tortoise did not want to leave the lake.

f. The tortoise had an idea.

g. The geese did not agree with the tortoise.

h. Some village children saw the tortoise and the geese up in the sky.

i. First they flew over a grassland and then they flew over a village.

j. The tortoise was very happy.

k. The tortoise got to another lake.

l. The tortoise opened his mouth to say something.

B. Write twenty questions about this text. Next, write answers to your questions.

C. Rewrite this text as a play and act it out in your classroom with other students.
Listen to this dialogue:

Carol: Gee! I’m really impressed by all the historical places in China!

Julie: Really? Why?

Carol: Well you see, in Australia we don’t have any ancient buildings nor do we have stories about our past ancestors.

Julie: Oh! That’s right. Up until 200 years ago there were no Europeans in Australia.

Carol: You’re right. Because my country is very hot and dry, the Aborigines used to follow the water sources and the herds of wild animals from place to place. They never planted wheat or vegetables. They didn’t keep herds of sheep or cows. They didn’t even have horses or donkeys to ride on. They just walked and carried their belongings with them.

Julie: Do they still live in this way?

Carol: No. Their lives changed when travelers from Britain went to Australia and made their homes there. Now there are few Aboriginal people living in their natural state.

Julie: Is Australia now like Britain?

Carol: Originally European Australians had a lot in common with Britain. Their language, food, clothing, and customs were the same. They built roads and railways and made large cities. They made farms and grew wheat and fruit trees. Farmers kept sheep and cows. People mined the minerals from the soil.

Julie: So, what has changed?

Carol: In the 1950’s people from Europe began to move to Australia. They brought with them their culture, food habits, songs, and dances. Nowadays the farming community is small and the city communities are large. Although everyone must speak English in order to study or do business, there are many other languages being used. There are both TV and radio programs for other nationalities and the libraries keep books of different languages. Now, nearly every nationality and ethnic group can be found in Australia.

Julie: Are there any Tibetans in Australia?

Carol: Yes, there are, but not many. They mainly live in the east coast cities of Sydney and Melbourne. Australians love to eat mutton and beef, and there is plenty of wheat flour for noodle making. I think Tibetans would be able to get used to life in Australia easily.

Carol: Here are some pictures about Australia. This is a picture of an Australian Aborigine. The second picture is about sheep farming areas. Finally, here are some pictures of Australian cities and towns.
Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie: 

Carol: 

Julie:
Exercises

A. Write answers to these following questions.

a. Does Australia have ancient buildings?
b. What changes happened in the 1950s?
c. What is the main language spoken in Australia?
d. Do Australians enjoy eating mutton?
e. Why does the speaker say Tibetans would be able to easily get used to life in Australia?

B. Discuss the following questions with another partner.

a. What ancient places have you visited?
b. Are there any ancient places near your home? If so, what are they? Describe them.
c. Do you know any stories about ancient times? If you do, tell it.
d. What differences are there between Tibetan nomads and Australian Aborigines?

New Zealand

Listen to the dialogue.

Jeff: Hello, I'm Jeff.
Sheryl: Hi, my name is Sheryl. You're from New Zealand, aren't you?
Jeff: Yes. I'm from Auckland. Where are you from?
Sheryl: I'm from Nelson.
Carol: Hello.
Jeff: Hello. Have you met Sheryl? She's from New Zealand too.
Carol: No, I haven't. Glad to meet you. Where do your come from in New Zealand?
Sheryl: Nelson. That's in the south Island.
Carol: And you're from the North Island, aren't you?
Jeff: That's right.
Carol: How many people live in New Zealand?
Jeff: About three and half million.
Carol: New Zealand is about the same size as England or Japan, isn't it?
Jeff: Yes, that's right.
Carol: What're New Zealand's main products?
Jeff: Beef, wool, and dairy products like milk, cheese, and butter.
Carol: Oh, just like Qinghai then.
Sheryl: That's right.
Jeff: Sure! How may I assist you?

Sheryl: Thank you for being available for the interview. I appreciate your time.

Jeff: No problem. I'm here to help.

Sheryl: My name is Sheryl, and I'm a student at the University of Southern California.

Jeff: Hi, Sheryl. What can I do for you today?

Sheryl: I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?

Carol: Hi, Jeff. I'm Carol, and I'm a software engineer at this company.

Jeff: Hi, Carol. How can I help you today?

Carol: I've been working on a project for the past six months, and I need some assistance.

Jeff: I'd be happy to help. What's the issue you're facing?

Sheryl: Thanks, Jeff. I'm interested in learning more about your experience in the tech industry.

Jeff: I've been working in tech for over 10 years. What's your background?
Exercises

A. Sheryl: You’re from New Zealand, aren’t you?
Jeff: Yes, I’m from Auckland. That’s in New Zealand’s largest city.
Sheryl: And you are from North Island, aren’t you?
Jeff: That’s right.

Sheryl: You’re from New Zealand, aren’t you?
Jeff: Yes, I’m from Auckland. That’s in New Zealand’s largest city.
Sheryl: And you are from North Island, aren’t you?
Jeff: That’s right.

B. Sheryl: It’s a rainy day, isn’t it?
Jeff: Yes, it is.

Sheryl: It’s a rainy day, isn’t it?
Jeff: Yes, it is.

Britain

My name is Julie and I come from England.

England is part of the United Kingdom or Great Britain that is made up of England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland. The population is about 57,000,000. Each area has its own customs and culture, as well as their own language. For example, Wales is situated on the west side of England. It is a small mountainous country with beautiful wild scenery. There are many sheep farmers with large flocks grazing on the lonely hills and moors. The Welsh people are very musical and many of their singers have become world famous.

Scotland is the northern part of Britain. Tourists from all over the world enjoy the beauty of the Scottish scenery. They love to visit ancient historic castles, eat Scottish salmon, and drink the world famous Scotch whisky. The Scotsmen’s national costume is the kilt. This is like a pleated skirt and has tartan patterns. They also love to play the bagpipes.

What about England? Is it like Scotland? No, England does not have any high mountains, but in the countryside there are pleasant rolling hills, green meadows, and many different kinds of trees and wild flowers. This is because there are frequent rainfalls. In fact it is said that the English never know what weather will be like tomorrow. The English people have a reputation of being blunt in the North part of the country, but also warm-hearted and hospitable. They are more reserved in the South.

Ireland is also a very green and beautiful country. The people are fun-loving and friendly.

Let me tell you something of city life in Britain today. Well, a familiar sight in every city are the immigrants who since the beginning of the century have been settling in Britain. Black people from the
West Indies and Asians from India, Pakistan, and Bangladesh now make up about 4.5 percent of the population and have brought their own culture and way of living to Britain.

Young couples like to start off married life in their own home. Most people buy their own homes and many families prefer to live in the suburbs, rather than in the center of the cities. Very few children grow up in large families and usually both parents have jobs.

How do the British spend their leisure hours? The British love sports. Football is the most popular team game. The British invented it and it has spread to every corner of the world. In all the major cities thousands of people attend football matches each week. There is a great interest in other sports too. Rugby, tennis, golf, and of course cricket give great pleasure. Gardening is also a great hobby. Most houses have their own garden. People are very proud of their gardens and spend hours each week tending the flowers or growing vegetables.

One of the great British traditions is going to the pub. What is a pub? Going to the pub is a way of life for the majority of British people. Pub, or Public Houses, are places where people can relax, meet their friends, and have a drink or eat together. Many of the pubs have their own unique atmosphere. Some of the old country pubs date back to the fifteenth century with solid beams and open wood fires.

My home is just a few miles from Stratford-Upon-Avon where William Shakespeare was born. People from all over the Britain and abroad come to the Theater to see his plays. In London too, and other large cities going to the theater is a great treat, also going to musical concerts and ballet.

What about schooling? Parents send their children to either the State schools or public schools. State schools are attended by 93 percent of children. Basic tuition costs nothing, whereas the non-State schools are expensive. At sixteen, students take their school-leaving certificates. Many then go into further job training in offices or are apprenticed. Those who want to go to university must take their “A” levels, advanced certificate. However, these are also courses for adults who wish to further their education while they are working. Some of these courses are taken at night school. One of the great opportunities during the past 25 years has been Open University. This is an opportunity for people who are working to gain degrees in all subjects. Even people as old as 70 are studying in Open University.
What percentage of children go to State schools?

What is the most popular sport in Britain today?

Where was William Shakespeare born?

Why do people go to pubs?

Describe an English country pub?

From this description of Britain, how is it different from and similar to the People's Republic of China?
Suggestions to the Teacher

1. Writing Practice: Periodically choose a picture and ask each student to write a story about it in their own words. Then ask each student to read their story to the class. Other students must listen to each story, take notes, and then retell the story with their partner.

2. Oral Practice: Ask students to work together in pairs or small groups and make up a story about a picture. Then each student must find another student and listen to her story and then tell her story.